Original instructions

Electric forklift truck

RX60-60
RX60-70
RX60-80
Address of manufacturer and contact details

STILL GmbH
Berzeliusstraße 10
22113 Hamburg, Germany
Tel. +49 (0) 40 7339-0
Fax: +49 (0) 40 7339-1622
Email: info@still.de
Website: http://www.still.de
## 1 Foreword

**Your truck** .......................................................... 2  
General ............................................................. 2  
CE labelling ........................................................... 2  
EC declaration of conformity in accordance with Machinery Directive ........................................... 3  
Accessories ........................................................... 4  

**Information about the documentation** .............................................................. 5  
Documentation scope ...................................................... 5  
Issue date and topicality of the operating instructions .............................................................. 6  
Copyright and trademark rights .............................................................. 6  
Explanation of information symbols used .............................................................. 6  
List of abbreviations ............................................................. 7  
Units .............................................................. 10  
Definition of directions ............................................................. 11  
Schematic views ............................................................. 11  

**Environmental considerations** ............................................................. 13  
Packaging ............................................................. 13  
Disposal of components and batteries ............................................................. 13  

## 2 Introduction

**Using the truck** ............................................................. 16  
Proper usage ............................................................. 16  
Proper use during towing ............................................................. 16  
Impermissible use ............................................................. 16  
Place of use ............................................................. 17  
Parking in temperatures below -10°C ............................................................. 18  
Using working platforms ............................................................. 18  

**Residual risk** ............................................................. 19  
Residual dangers, residual risks ............................................................. 19  
Special risks associated with using the truck and attachments ............................................................. 20  
Overview of hazards and countermeasures ............................................................. 22  
Danger to employees ............................................................. 25  

## 3 Safety

**Definition of responsible persons** ............................................................. 28  
Operating company ............................................................. 28  
Specialist ............................................................. 28  
Drivers ............................................................. 29  

---

STILL  
56358042501 EN - 10/2016  
III
# Basic principles for safe operation

Insurance cover on company premises

Changes and retrofitting

Changes to the overhead guard and roof loads

Warning regarding non-original parts

Damage, defects and misuse of safety systems

Tyres

Medical equipment

Exercise caution when handling gas springs and accumulators

Length of the fork arms

# Safety tests

Regular safety inspection of the truck

Insulation testing

# Safety regulations for handling consumables

Permissible consumables

Oils

Hydraulic fluid

Battery acid

Coolant and cooling fluid

Disposal of consumables

# Emissions

# Overviews

Overview

Overview of the driver’s compartment

Operating and display elements

Display operating unit

Operating devices for hydraulic and driving functions

Double mini-lever

Three-way mini-lever

Four-way mini-lever

Joystick 4Plus

Fingertip

Mini console

Identification points

Overview

Nameplate

Production number

StVZO (Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) information
5 Operation

Checks and tasks to be carried out prior to commissioning ..................................................... 66
Visual inspections ......................................................................................................................... 66
Filling the washer system ............................................................................................................. 68
Checking the condition of the wheels and tyres ....................................................................... 69
Checking the coolant level .......................................................................................................... 70
Adjusting the MSG 65/MSG 75 driver's seat ............................................................................ 72
Adjusting the armrest ................................................................................................................... 76
Adjusting the steering column ...................................................................................................... 77

Commissioning .............................................................................................................................. 78
Climbing into and out of the truck ................................................................................................. 78
Connecting the battery male connector ....................................................................................... 81
Unlocking the emergency off switch ............................................................................................ 82
Switching on the key switch .......................................................................................................... 82
Access authorisation with PIN code (variant) ............................................................................ 85
Operating the signal horn ............................................................................................................. 95
Seat belt ........................................................................................................................................ 95
Using the driver's cab .................................................................................................................... 98
Checking the brake system for correct function ......................................................................... 98
Checking the steering system for correct function ...................................................................... 99
Checking the emergency off function ......................................................................................... 100
Zero adjustment of the load measurement (variant) ................................................................ 101
Checking the vertical lift mast position (variant) for correct function .................................... 102

Traction .......................................................................................................................................... 103
Safety regulations when driving ................................................................................................... 103
Roadways .................................................................................................................................... 105
Setting the drive programme ....................................................................................................... 107
Selecting the drive direction ......................................................................................................... 109
Actuating the drive direction switch, mini-lever version .......................................................... 110
Actuating the vertical rocker switch for the "drive direction", joystick 4Plus version ............... 110
Actuate the drive direction switch, fingertip version .................................................................. 111
Actuating the drive direction switch, mini-console version ..................................................... 111
Starting drive mode ..................................................................................................................... 111
Starting drive mode, dual pedal version (variant) .................................................................... 114
Operating the service brake ........................................................................................................ 117
Actuating the mechanical parking brake .................................................................................... 118
Steering ........................................................................................................................................ 120
Reducing speed when turning (Curve Speed Control) ............................................................... 121
Reducing speed with a raised load (variant) .............................................................................. 122

Lifting ........................................................................................................................................... 123
Lifting system variants .................................................................................................................. 123
Table of contents

Automatic lift cut out (variant) ........................................... 123
Lift mast vertical position (variant) ......................................... 124
Types of lift mast ................................................................... 128
Malfunctions during lifting mode .............................................. 129
Hydraulic blocking function .................................................... 130
Lifting system operating devices ............................................. 131
Controlling the lifting system using a double mini-lever ............... 132
Controlling the lifting system using a triple mini-lever ................ 133
Controlling the lifting system using a quadruple mini-lever ......... 134
Controlling the lifting system using the joystick 4Plus ............... 135
Controlling the lifting system with the fingertip console ............. 137
Changing the fork arms ...................................................... 138
Fork extension (variant) ..................................................... 140
Operation with reversible fork arms (variant) .......................... 142

Handling loads .................................................................. 144
Safety regulations when handing loads .................................... 144
Before taking up load ....................................................... 145
Load measurement (variant) ............................................... 146
Picking up loads .............................................................. 149
Danger area ................................................................. 150
Transporting pallets .......................................................... 151
Transporting suspended loads .............................................. 151
Load pick up ..................................................................... 152
Transporting loads ........................................................... 156
Setting down loads ......................................................... 157
Driving on ascending and descending slopes ......................... 159
Driving on lifts ............................................................... 159
Driving on loading bridges .................................................. 161

Working with attachments .................................................... 162
Fitting attachments ............................................................ 162
Relinquishing the pressure from the hydraulic system .............. 164
General instructions for controlling attachments ..................... 166
Controlling attachments using a double mini-lever .................. 168
Controlling attachments using the double mini-lever and the 5th function ................................................. 170
Controlling attachments using a triple mini-lever ................. 172
Controlling attachments using the three-way mini-lever and the 5th function .............................................. 174
Controlling attachments using a quadruple mini-lever .......... 176
Controlling attachments using the four-way mini-lever and the 5th function ............................................. 178
Controlling attachments via the joystick 4Plus ...................... 180
Controlling attachments using the joystick 4Plus and the 5th function ....................................................... 181
Controlling the attachments with fingertip ............................. 182

VI
## Table of contents

- Controlling attachments with fingertip and the 5th function ........................................... 183
- Clamp locking mechanism (variant) ..................................................................................... 185
- Taking up a load using attachments .................................................................................... 189

### Operating auxiliary equipment

- Switching the lighting on and off ......................................................................................... 190
- Switching the rotating beacon on and off .......................................................................... 191
- Switching the hazard warning system on and off ............................................................... 192
- Switching the direction indicators on and off ...................................................................... 192
- Switching the double working spotlights on and off ......................................................... 194

- Operating the windscreen wiper/washer ........................................................................... 196
- FleetManager (variant) ........................................................................................................ 196
- Accident recorder (variant) .................................................................................................. 197
- Driver restraint systems (variants) ...................................................................................... 197

### Cab operation

- Opening the cab door ........................................................................................................... 197
- Closing the cab door ........................................................................................................... 198
- Opening the side windows .................................................................................................... 198
- Closing the side windows ..................................................................................................... 199

- Operating the interior lighting ............................................................................................. 200
- Operating the rear window heating ...................................................................................... 201
- Radio (variant) .................................................................................................................... 201
- Heating system (variant) ..................................................................................................... 202
- Push-up roof window (variant) ............................................................................................ 204
- Clipboard (variant) ............................................................................................................. 204

### Trailer operation

- Towed load .......................................................................................................................... 205
- Coupling pin in the counterweight ....................................................................................... 206
- Automatic tow coupling ...................................................................................................... 208

### Operating the display and operating unit

- Indicators ............................................................................................................................... 217
- Adjusting the displays .......................................................................................................... 220
- Symbols in the display .......................................................................................................... 220
- Setting the date or time ........................................................................................................ 225
- Resetting the daily kilometres and daily operating hours .................................................. 225
- Setting the language ............................................................................................................ 226
- Soft key button for operating various equipment variants .................................................. 226

### Blue-Q efficiency mode

- Functional description .......................................................................................................... 228
- Effects on additional consumers .......................................................................................... 228
- Switching efficiency mode Blue-Q on and off .................................................................... 229
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Blue-Q efficiency mode</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display messages</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display content</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error code table</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General messages</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive-specific messages</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating in special operating situations</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crane loading</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procedure in emergencies</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency shutdown</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procedure if truck tips over</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency hammer</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency lowering</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Releasing the spring-operated brake</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handling the battery</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety regulations when handling the battery</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing to a different battery type</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening and closing the battery cover</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disconnecting the battery male connector</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking the battery charge status</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charging the battery</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equalising charge to prevent a deep discharge of the battery</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing the battery using a truck</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PowerPlusLife battery</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PowerPlusLife® battery</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PowerPlusLife® temperature monitoring</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PowerPlusLife® error messages</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decommissioning</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking the truck securely and switching it off</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel chock (variant)</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutting down and storing the truck</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-commissioning after shutdown</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning the truck</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning the electrical system</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning load chains</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning the windows</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After washing</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6 Maintenance

General maintenance information ................................................................. 298
Personnel qualifications .................................................................................. 298
Information for carrying out maintenance ...................................................... 298
Maintenance - 1000 hours/annually ............................................................... 301
Maintenance - 3000 hours/every two years ................................................... 304
Ordering spare parts and wearing parts ......................................................... 304
Quality and quantity of the required operating materials ................................. 304
Lubrication plan ............................................................................................... 306
Maintenance data table ................................................................................... 307

Safety regulations for maintenance ................................................................ 310
General information ........................................................................................ 310
Working on the hydraulic equipment ............................................................... 310
Working on the electrical equipment ............................................................... 310
Safety devices .................................................................................................. 311
Set values ......................................................................................................... 311
Lifting and jacking up ....................................................................................... 311
Working at the front of the truck ..................................................................... 312

Providing access to maintenance points ....................................................... 314
Removing and attaching the left side cover .................................................... 314
Installing and removing the bottom plate ....................................................... 314
Opening/closing the front right cover .............................................................. 316
Removing and attaching the rear cover .......................................................... 317

Servicing ......................................................................................................... 318
Cleaning the radiator and checking for leaks ................................................... 318
Topping up cooling fluid and checking coolant content .................................... 319
Servicing wheels and tyres ............................................................................. 321
Replacing the fuses .......................................................................................... 323
Checking the battery condition, acid level and acid density .............................. 326
Checking the hydraulic oil level ..................................................................... 327
Changing the heating system fresh air filter ................................................... 328
Replacing the recirculated air filter for the heating system ................................. 330

1000-hour maintenance/annual maintenance ............................................... 331
Other tasks ...................................................................................................... 331
Checking the driver’s seat .............................................................................. 331
Maintaining the seat belt ............................................................................... 331
Checking the door latch .................................................................................. 333
Lubricating the joints and controls .................................................................. 333
Lubricating the lift mast and roller track .......................................................... 333
Checking the lift cylinders and connections for leaks ...................................... 334
Checking the hydraulic system for leaks ......................................................... 334
Table of contents

Checking the fork arms .................................................. 335
Checking the reversible fork arms ..................................... 335
Greasing the automatic tow coupling .................................. 336

7 Technical data

Dimensions ................................................................. 340
VDI datasheet ............................................................. 342
Ergonomic dimensions .................................................... 346
Battery specifications ...................................................... 347
Fuse assignment .......................................................... 349
Foreword
Your truck

General

The truck described in these operating instructions corresponds to the applicable standards and safety regulations.

If the truck is to be operated on public roads, it must conform to the existing national regulations for the country in which it is being used. The driving permit must be obtained from the appropriate office.

The trucks have been fitted with state-of-the-art technology. All that remains is to handle the truck safely and maintain its functionality.

These operating instructions provide the necessary information to do this. Read and observe the information provided before commissioning the truck. This will prevent accidents and ensure that the warranty remains valid.

CE labelling

The manufacturer uses CE labelling to indicate that the truck complies with the standards and regulations valid at the time of marketing. This is confirmed by the issued EC declaration of conformity. The CE labelling is attached to the nameplate.

An independent structural change or addition to the truck can compromise safety, thus invalidating the EC declaration of conformity.

The EC declaration of conformity must be carefully stored and made available to the responsible authorities.
EC declaration of conformity in accordance with Machinery Directive

Declaration

STILL GmbH
Berzeliusstraße 10
D-22113 Hamburg Germany

We declare that the

Industrial truck according to these operating instructions
Model according to these operating instructions

conforms to the latest version of the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.

Personnel authorised to compile the technical documents:

See EC compliance declaration

STILL GmbH
Your truck

Accessories

- Key for key switch (two pieces)
- Key for cab (variant)
- Hexagon socket wrench for emergency lowering
Information about the documentation

Documentation scope

• Original operating instructions
• Original operating instructions for attachments (variant)
• Spare parts list
• VDMA rules for the proper use of industrial trucks

These operating instructions describe all measures necessary for the safe operation and proper maintenance of your truck in all possible variants available at the time of printing. Special versions to meet customer requirements are documented in separate operating instructions. If you have any questions, please contact your authorised service centre.

Enter the production number and year of manufacturer from the nameplate in the space provided:

Production number

...................................................

Year of manufacture

...................................................

Please quote the production number during all technical enquiries.

Each truck comes with a set of operating instructions. These instructions must be stored carefully and must be available to the driver and operating company at any time. The storage location is specified in the "Overviews" chapter.

If the operating instructions are lost, the operator must obtain a replacement from the manufacturer immediately.

The operating instructions are included in the spare parts list and can be reordered there as a spare part.

The personnel responsible for operating and maintaining the equipment must be familiar with these operating instructions.

The operating company must ensure that all users have received, read and understood these operating instructions.
Information about the documentation

NOTE

Please observe the definition of the following responsible persons: “operating company” and “driver”.

Thank you for reading and complying with these operating instructions. If you have any questions or suggestions for improvements, or if you have found any errors, please contact the authorised service centre.

Issue date and topicality of the operating instructions

The issue date of these operating instructions can be found on the title page.

STILL is constantly engaged in the further development of trucks. These operating instructions are subject to change, and any claims based on the information and/or illustrations contained in them cannot be asserted.

Please contact your authorised service centre for technical support relating to your truck.

Copyright and trademark rights

These instructions must not be reproduced, translated or made accessible to third parties—including as excerpts—except with the express written approval of the manufacturer.

Explanation of information symbols used

⚠️ DANGER

Indicates procedures that must be strictly adhered to in order to prevent the risk of fatalities.

⚠️ WARNING

Indicates procedures that must be strictly adhered to in order to prevent the risk of injuries.
Information about the documentation

CAUTION

Indicates procedures that must be strictly adhered to in order to prevent material damage and/or destruction.

NOTE

For technical requirements that require special attention.

ENVIRONMENT NOTE

To prevent environmental damage.

List of abbreviations

NOTE

This list of abbreviations applies to all types of operating instructions. Not all of the abbreviations that are listed here will necessarily appear in these operating instructions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABE</td>
<td>Display operating unit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arb-SchG</td>
<td>Arbeitsschutzgesetz</td>
<td>German implementaton of EU occupational health and safety directives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Betr-SichV</td>
<td>Betriebssicherheitsverordnung</td>
<td>German implementation of the EU working equipment directive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BG</td>
<td>Berufsgenossenschaft</td>
<td>German insurance company for the company and employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BGG</td>
<td>Berufsgenossenschaftlicher Grundsatz</td>
<td>German principles and test specifications for occupational health and safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BGR</td>
<td>Berufsgenossenschaftliche Regel</td>
<td>German rules and recommendations for occupational health and safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DGUV</td>
<td>Berufsgenossenschaftliche Vorschrift</td>
<td>German accident prevention regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CE</td>
<td>Communauté Européenne</td>
<td>Confirms conformity with product-specific European directives (CE mark)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEE</td>
<td>Commission on the Rules for the Approval of the Electrical Equipment</td>
<td>International commission on the rules for the approval of electrical equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC</td>
<td>Direct Current</td>
<td>Direct current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DFÜ</td>
<td>Datenfernübertragung</td>
<td>Remote data transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIN</td>
<td>Deutsches Institut für Normung</td>
<td>German standardisation organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EG</td>
<td>European Community</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Abbreviation | Meaning | Explanation
--- | --- | ---
EN | European standard | European Federation of Materials Handling and Storage Equipment
FEM | Fédération Européenne de la Manutention | European Federation of Materials Handling and Storage Equipment
F<sub>max</sub> | maximum Force | Maximum power
GAA | Gewerbeaufsichtsamt | German authority for monitoring/issuing regulations for worker protection, environmental protection, and consumer protection
GPRS | General Packet Radio Service | Transfer of data packets in wireless networks
ID no. | ID number |  
ISO | International Organization for Standardization | International standardisation organisation
LAN | Local Area Network | Local area network
K<sub>pA</sub> | Uncertainty of measurement of sound pressure levels |  
LED | Light Emitting Diode | Light emitting diode
L<sub>p</sub> | Sound pressure level at the workplace |  
L<sub>pAZ</sub> | Average continuous sound pressure level in the driver's compartment |  
LSP | Load centre of gravity | Distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the front face of the fork backs
MAK | Maximum workplace concentration | Maximum permissible air concentrations of a substance at the workplace
Max. | Maximum | Highest value of an amount
Min. | Minimum | Lowest value of an amount
PIN | Personal Identification Number | Personal identification number
PPE | Personal protective equipment |  
SE | Super-Elastic | Superelastic tyres (solid rubber tyres)
SIT | Snap-In Tyre | Tyres for simplified assembly, without loose rim parts
StVZO | Straßenverkehrs-Zulassungs-Ordnung | German regulations for approval of vehicles on public roads
TRGS | Technische Regel für Gefahrstoffe | Ordinance on hazardous materials applicable in the Federal Republic of Germany
VDE | Verband der Elektrotechnik Elektronik Informationstechnik | German technical/scientific association
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VDI</td>
<td>Verein Deutscher Ingenieure</td>
<td>German technical/scientific association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VDMA</td>
<td>Verband Deutscher Maschinen- und Anlagenbau e.V.</td>
<td>German Mechanical Engineering Industry Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WLAN</td>
<td>Wireless LAN</td>
<td>Wireless local area network</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Units

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit symbol</th>
<th>Unit name</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>°C</td>
<td>Degree Celsius</td>
<td>Unit of temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>°F</td>
<td>Degree Fahrenheit</td>
<td>Unit of temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Ampere</td>
<td>Unit of electrical current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ah</td>
<td>Ampere hour</td>
<td>Unit of electrical charge storage capacity (nominal capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dB</td>
<td>Decibel</td>
<td>Unit of sound intensity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cm</td>
<td>Centimetre</td>
<td>Unit of length (1 cm = 10 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cm³</td>
<td>Cubic centimetres</td>
<td>Unit of volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>Gram</td>
<td>Unit of mass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h/d</td>
<td>Hours per day</td>
<td>Hours driven per day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kg</td>
<td>Kilogram</td>
<td>Unit of mass (1 kg = 1000 g)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kg/m³</td>
<td>Kilograms per cubic metre</td>
<td>Unit of density (ratio of the mass of a body to its volume)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km/h</td>
<td>Kilometres per hour</td>
<td>Unit of speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kN</td>
<td>Kilonewton</td>
<td>Unit of force (1 kN = 1000 N)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kW</td>
<td>Kilowatt</td>
<td>Unit of electrical power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kWh/h</td>
<td>Kilowatt hour/hour</td>
<td>Energy consumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>Litre</td>
<td>Unit of volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l/h</td>
<td>Litres per hour</td>
<td>Unit of consumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l/min</td>
<td>Litres per minute</td>
<td>Unit of consumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>Metre</td>
<td>Unit of length (1 m = 100 cm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m/s²</td>
<td>Metres per second squared</td>
<td>Unit of acceleration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min</td>
<td>Minute</td>
<td>Unit of time (1 min. = 60 s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpm</td>
<td>Revolution(s) per minute</td>
<td>Unit of revolution speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm</td>
<td>Millimetre</td>
<td>Unit of length (1 mm = 10⁻³ m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Newton</td>
<td>Unit of force (1 N = 10⁻³ kN)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nm</td>
<td>Newton metre</td>
<td>Unit of torque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>Second</td>
<td>Base unit for time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Definition of directions

The directions "forwards" (1), "backwards" (3), "right" (2) and "left" (4) refer to the installation position of the parts as seen from the driver’s compartment; the load is to the front.

### Schematic views

#### View of functions and operations

This documentation explains the (usually sequential) chain of certain functions or operations. Schematic diagrams of a counterbalance truck are used to illustrate these procedures.

**NOTE**

These schematic diagrams are not representative of the structural state of the documented truck. The diagrams are used solely for the purpose of clarifying procedures.
View of the display operating unit

**NOTE**

Views of operating statuses and values in the display of the display operating unit are examples and partly dependent on the truck equipment. As a result, the displays shown of the actual operating statuses and values can vary. Information that is not relevant for descriptions is not shown.
Environmental considerations

Packaging
During delivery of the truck, certain parts are packaged to provide protection during transport. This packaging must be removed completely prior to initial start-up.

⚠️ ENVIRONMENT NOTE
The packaging material must be disposed of properly after delivery of the truck.

Disposal of components and batteries
The truck is composed of different materials. If components or batteries need to be replaced and disposed of, they must be:
- disposed of,
- treated or
- recycled in accordance with regional and national regulations.

ℹ️ NOTE
The documentation provided by the battery manufacturer must be observed when disposing of batteries.

⚠️ ENVIRONMENT NOTE
We recommend working with a waste management company for disposal purposes.
Introduction
Using the truck

Proper usage

The truck described in these operating instructions is suitable for lifting, transporting and stacking loads.

The truck may only be used for its proper purpose as set out and described in these operating instructions.

If the truck is to be used for purposes other than those specified in the operating instructions, the approval of the manufacturer and, if applicable, the relevant regulatory authorities must be obtained beforehand to prevent hazards.

The maximum load to be lifted is specified on the capacity rating plate (load diagram) and must not be exceeded; see also the chapter entitled "Before picking up a load".

Proper use during towing

This truck is suitable for the occasional towing of trailers and is equipped with a towing device for this purpose. This occasional towing may not exceed 2% of the daily operating time. If the truck is to be used for towing on a more regular basis, the manufacturer should be consulted.

The regulations regarding trailer operation must be observed; see chapter "Trailer operation".

Impermissible use

The operating company or driver, and not the manufacturer, is liable for any hazards caused by improper use.

NOTE

Please observe the definition of the following responsible persons: "operating company" and "driver".

Use for purposes other than those described in these operating instructions is prohibited.
**DANGER**

There is a risk of fatal injury from falling off the truck while it is moving!

- It is prohibited to carry passengers on the truck.

The truck may not be operated in areas where there is a risk of fire, explosion or corrosion, or in areas that are particularly dusty.

Stacking or unstacking is not permissible on inclined surfaces or ramps.

**Place of use**

The truck can be used both outdoors and in buildings. Operation on public roads is only permitted if the "StVZO" (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) equipment variant is installed.

If the truck is to be operated on public roads, it must conform to the national regulations for the country in which it is being used.

The ground must have an adequate load capacity (concrete, asphalt) and a rough surface. Routes, work areas and aisle widths must conform to the specifications in these operating instructions, see the "Routes" chapter.

Driving on upward and downward gradients is permitted provided the specified data and specifications are observed, see the "Routes" chapter.

The truck is suitable for indoor and outdoor use in countries ranging from the Tropics to Nordic regions (temperature range: -20 °C to +40 °C).

This truck is not designed to be operated in cold stores.
Using the truck

**CAUTION**

Batteries may freeze!

If the truck is parked in an ambient temperature of below -10 °C for an extended period, the batteries will cool down. The electrolyte may freeze and damage the batteries. The truck will then not be ready for operation.

– When the ambient temperature is below -10 °C, only park the truck for short periods of time.

The operating company must ensure suitable fire protection for the relevant application in the truck’s surroundings. Depending on the application, additional fire protection must be provided on the truck. If in doubt, contact the relevant authorities.

**NOTE**

Please note the definition of “operating company” in the sense of responsible persons!

Parking in temperatures below -10°C

**CAUTION**

Batteries can freeze!

If the truck is parked in an ambient temperature below -10°C for an extended period, the batteries will cool down. The electrolyte may freeze and damage the batteries. The truck is then not ready for operation.

– When the ambient temperature is below -10°C, only park the truck for short periods of time.

Using working platforms

**WARNING**

The use of working platforms is regulated by national law. The use of working platforms is only permitted by virtue of the jurisdiction in the country of use.

– Observe national legislation.

– Before using working platforms, consult the national regulatory authorities.
Residual risk

Residual dangers, residual risks

Despite careful working and compliance with standards and regulations, the occurrence of other risks when using the truck cannot be entirely excluded.

The truck and all other system components comply with current safety requirements. Nevertheless, even when the truck is used for its proper purpose and all instructions are followed, some residual risk cannot be excluded.

Even beyond the narrow danger areas of the truck itself, a residual risk cannot be excluded. Persons in this area around the truck must exercise a heightened degree of awareness, so that they can react immediately in the event of any malfunction, incident or breakdown etc.

WARNING

All persons that are in the vicinity of the truck must be instructed regarding these risks that arise through use of the truck.

In addition, we draw attention to the safety regulations in these operating instructions.

Risks can include:

• Escape of consumables due to leakages, rupture of lines and containers etc.

• Risk of accident when driving over difficult ground such as gradients, smooth or irregular surfaces, or with poor visibility etc.

• Falling, tripping etc. when moving on the truck, especially in wet weather, with leaking consumables or on icy surfaces

• Fire and explosion risks due to batteries and electrical voltages

• Human error resulting from failure to observe the safety regulations,

• Unrepaired damage or defective and worn components,

• Insufficient maintenance and testing

• Use of incorrect consumables

• Exceeding test intervals
Residual risk

The manufacturer is not held responsible for accidents involving the truck caused by the failure of the operating company to comply with these regulations either intentionally or carelessly.

Stability

The stability of the truck has been tested to the latest technological standards and is guaranteed provided that the truck is used properly and according to its intended purpose. These standards only take into account the dynamic and static tipping forces that can arise during specified use in accordance with the operating rules and intended purpose. However, the danger of exceeding the moment of tilt due to improper use or incorrect operation and losing stability can never be excluded.

The loss of stability can be avoided or minimised by the following actions:

– Always secure the load against slipping, e.g. by lashing.
– Always transport unstable loads in suitable containers.
– Always drive slowly when cornering.
– Drive with the load lowered.
– Even with sideshifts, align the load as centrally as possible with the truck and transport in this position.
– Avoid turning and diagonally driving across slopes or gradients.
– Never have the load facing downhill when travelling on slopes or gradients.
– Pick up only loads of the approved width.
– Always take great care when transporting suspended loads.
– Do not drive over ramp edges or steps.

Special risks associated with using the truck and attachments

Approval from the manufacturer and attachment manufacturer must be obtained each
time the truck is used in a manner that falls outside the scope of normal use, and in cases where the driver is not certain that he can use the truck correctly and without the risk of accidents.
Overview of hazards and countermeasures

**NOTE**

This table is intended to help evaluate the hazards in your facility and applies to all drive types. It does not claim to be complete.

- Observe the national regulations for the country in which the truck is being used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hazard</th>
<th>Measure</th>
<th>Check note ✓ Complete - Not applicable</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Truck equipment does not comply with local regulations</td>
<td>Test</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>If in doubt, consult competent factory inspectorate or employers’ liability insurance association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lack of skills and qualification of driver</td>
<td>Driver training (sit-on and stand-on)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>BGG 925 VDI 3313 driver permit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usage by unauthorised persons</td>
<td>Access with key only for authorised persons</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Truck not in a safe condition</td>
<td>Recurrent testing and rectification of defects</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk of falling when using working platforms</td>
<td>Compliance with national regulations (different national laws)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV) and employer’s liability insurance associations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impaired visibility due to load</td>
<td>Resource planning</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contamination of respiratory air</td>
<td>Assessment of diesel exhaust gases</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Technical Regulations for Hazardous Substances (TRGS) 554 and the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assessment of LPG exhaust gases</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German threshold limit values list (MAK-Liste) and the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Residual Risk Hazard Measure Check Note

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hazard</th>
<th>Measure</th>
<th>Check note</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Impermissible usage (improper usage)</td>
<td>Issuing of operating instructions</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV) and German Health and labour protection law (ArbSchG)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Written notice of instruction to driver</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV) and German Health and labour protection law (ArbSchG)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV), the operating instructions and the German Engineering Federation (VDMA) rules</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When fuelling</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a) Diesel</td>
<td>Note the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV), the operating instructions and the German Engineering Federation (VDMA) rules</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) LPG</td>
<td>Note German Social Accident Insurance (DGUV) regulation D34, the operating instructions and the German Engineering Federation (VDMA) rules</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Residual risk

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hazard</th>
<th>Measure</th>
<th>Check note</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When charging the traction battery</td>
<td>Note the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV), the operating instructions and the German Engineering Federation (VDMA) rules</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Association for Electrical, Electronic and Information Technologies (VDE) regulation 0510: In particular - Ensure adequate ventilation - Insulation value within the permissible range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When using battery chargers</td>
<td>Note the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV), employers’ liability insurance association regulation 104 and the operating instructions</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV) and employers’ liability insurance association regulation 104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When parking LPG trucks</td>
<td>Note the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV), employers’ liability insurance association regulation 104 and the operating instructions</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV) and employers’ liability insurance association regulation 104</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**With driverless transport systems**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hazard</th>
<th>Measure</th>
<th>Check note</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Roadway quality inadequate</td>
<td>Clean/clear driveways</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load carrier incorrect/slipped</td>
<td>Reattach load to pallet</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive behaviour unpredictable</td>
<td>Employee training</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driveways blocked</td>
<td>Mark driveways, Keep driveways clear</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Danger to employees**

According to the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV) and labour protection law (ArbSchG), the operating company must determine and assess hazards during operation, and establish the labour protection measures required for employees (BetrSichVO). The operating company must therefore draw up appropriate operating instructions (§ 6 ArbSchG) and make them available to the driver. A responsible person must be appointed.

NOTE

Please observe the definition of the following responsible persons: "operating company" and "driver".

The construction and equipment of the truck correspond to the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC and are therefore marked with CE labelling. These elements are therefore not included in the hazard assessment. Attachments possess their own CE labelling and likewise are not included for that reason. The operating company must, however, select the type and equipment of the trucks so as to comply with the local provisions for deployment.

The result must be documented (§ 6 ArbSchG). In the case of truck applications involving similar hazard situations, the results may be summarised. This overview (see chapter "Overview of hazards and countermeasures") provides help on complying with this regulation. The overview specifies the main hazards that are the most frequent cause of accidents in the event of non-compliance. If other major

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hazard</th>
<th>Measure</th>
<th>Check note</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Driveways intersect</td>
<td>Announce right-of-way rule</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No person detection during depositing and retrieval</td>
<td>Employee training</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Residual risk

operational hazards are involved, they must also be taken into consideration.

The conditions of use for trucks are broadly similar in many plants, so the hazards can be summarised in one overview. Observe the information provided by the relevant employers’ liability insurance association on this subject.
Safety
Definition of responsible persons

Operating company

The operating company is the natural or legal person or group who operates the truck or on whose authority the truck is used.

The operating company must ensure that the truck is only used for its proper purpose and in compliance with the safety regulations set out in these operating instructions.

The operating company must ensure that all users read and understand the safety information.

The operating company is responsible for the scheduling and correct performance of regular safety checks.

We recommend that the national performance specifications are adhered to.

Specialist

A qualified person is defined as a service engineer or a person who fulfils the following requirements:

- A completed vocational qualification that demonstrably proves their professional expertise. This proof should consist of a vocational qualification or a similar document.

- Professional experience indicating that the qualified person has gained practical experience of industrial trucks over a proven period during their career. During this time, this person has become familiar with a wide range of symptoms that require checks to be carried out, such as based on the results of a hazard assessment or a daily inspection.

- Recent professional involvement in the field of the industrial truck test in question and an appropriate further qualification are essential. The qualified person must have experience of carrying out the test in question or of carrying out similar tests. Moreover, this person must be aware of the latest technological developments.
regarding the industrial truck to be tested and the risk being assessed

Drivers

This truck may only be driven by suitable persons who are at least 18 years of age, have been trained in driving, have demonstrated their skills in driving and handling loads to the operating company or an authorised representative, and have been specifically instructed to drive the truck. Specific knowledge of the truck to be operated is also required.

The training requirements under §3 of the Health and Safety at Work Act and §9 of the plant safety regulations are deemed to have been satisfied if the driver has been trained in accordance with BGG (General Employers’ Liability Insurance Association Act) 925. Observe the national regulations for your country.

Driver rights, duties and rules of behaviour

The driver must be trained in his rights and duties.

The driver must be granted the required rights.

The driver must wear protective equipment (protection suit, safety footwear, safety helmet, industrial goggles and gloves) that is appropriate for the conditions, the job and the load to be lifted. Solid footwear should be worn to ensure safe driving and braking.

The driver must be familiar with the operating instructions and have access to them at all times.

The driver must:
• have read and understood the operating manual
• have familiarised himself with safe operation of the truck
• be physically and mentally able to drive the truck safely
DANGER

The use of drugs, alcohol or medications that affect reactions impair the ability to drive the truck!

Individuals under the influence of the aforementioned substances are not permitted to perform work of any kind on or with the truck.

Prohibition of use by unauthorised persons

The driver is responsible for the truck during working hours. He must not allow unauthorised persons to operate the truck.

When leaving the truck, the driver must secure it against unauthorised use, e.g. by pulling out the key.
Basic principles for safe operation

Insurance cover on company premises

In many cases, company premises are restricted public traffic areas.

NOTE

The business liability insurance should be reviewed to ensure that, in the event of any damage caused in restricted public traffic areas, there is insurance cover for the truck in respect of third parties.

Changes and retrofitting

If the truck is used for work that is not listed in the guidelines or in these instructions and has to be converted or retrofitted accordingly, you must note that any change to its structural state can affect the handling and stability of the truck, which in turn can lead to accidents.

You should therefore contact your service centre beforehand.

Changes that will adversely affect stability, load capacity and safety systems, among other things, must not be made without the manufacturer’s approval.

The truck can only be converted with written approval from the manufacturer. Approval from the responsible authority must be obtained if necessary.

Changes to the brakes, steering, control elements, circumferential view, equipment variants (e.g. attachments) must also not be made without the prior written approval of the manufacturer.

We warn against the installation and use of restraint systems not approved by the manufacturer.
3 Safety
Basic principles for safe operation

⚠️ DANGER
Risk of injury if truck tips over!
Even when using an approved restraint system, there is some residual risk that the driver might be injured if the truck tips over. This risk of injury can be reduced through the combined use of a restraint system and the seat belt. In addition, the seat belt protects against the consequences of rear-end collisions and falling off a ramp.
– Use the seat belt too.

When carrying out welding work on the truck, it is essential that the battery and all connections to the electronic control cards are disconnected. Contact the authorised service centre on this matter.

⚠️ DANGER
Risk of explosion from additional holes in the battery hood!
Explosive gases can escape and lead to potentially fatal injuries if they explode. Sealing holes with plugs is not sufficient to prevent gas from escaping.
– Do not drill any holes in the battery hood.

⚠️ DANGER
Risk of accident from additional holes in the battery hood!
The rigidity of the battery hood is impaired and the battery hood may fracture. The driver’s seat may collapse, leading to a risk of accident due to uncontrolled steering movements whilst driving.
– Do not drill any holes in the battery hood.
**DANGER**

**Risk to life from falling load!**

If the truck is not equipped with an overhead guard, there is a risk to the driver’s life, as he may be struck by a load falling from a lift height of 1800 mm or greater.

Operation of the truck without an overhead guard at a lift height of over 1800 mm is prohibited.

– For lift heights of 1800 mm and above, only use trucks with an overhead guard.

In the event of the manufacturer going into liquidation and the company not being taken over by another legal person, the operating company can make changes to the truck.

To do so, the operating company must fulfil the following prerequisites:

- Construction documents, test documents and assembly instructions associated with the change must be archived and remain accessible at all times.

- Check that the capacity rating plate, decal information, hazard warnings and the operating instructions are consistent with regard to the changes and modify if necessary.

- The change must be designed, checked and implemented by a design office that specialises in industrial trucks in accordance with the standards and directives valid at the time the changes are made.

- Decal information with the following data must be permanently affixed to the truck so it is clearly visible:
  - Type of change
  - Date of change
  - Name and address of the company implementing the change.
Basic principles for safe operation

Changes to the overhead guard and roof loads

⚠️ DANGER

In the event of the overhead guard failing due to a falling load or the truck tipping over, there are potentially fatal consequences for the driver. There is a risk to life!

Welding and drilling on the overhead guard changes the material characteristics and the structural design of the overhead guard. Excessive forces caused by falling loads or the truck tipping over may result in buckling of the modified overhead guard and no protection for the driver.

- Do not perform welding on the overhead guard.
- Do not perform drilling on the overhead guard.

⚠️ CAUTION

Heavy roof loads damage the overhead guard!

To ensure the stability of the overhead guard at all times, a roof load may only be mounted on the overhead guard if the structural design has been tested and the manufacturer has given approval.

- Seek advice from the authorised service centre for the mounting of roof loads.

Warning regarding non-original parts

Original parts, attachments and accessories are specially designed for this truck. We specifically draw your attention to the fact that parts, attachments and accessories supplied by other companies have not been tested and approved by STILL.

⚠️ CAUTION

Installation and/or use of such products may therefore have a negative impact on the design features of the truck and thus impair active and/or passive driving safety.

We recommend that you obtain approval from the manufacturer and, if necessary, from the relevant regulatory authorities before installing such parts. The manufacturer accepts no liability for any damage caused by the use of non-original parts and accessories without approval.
Damage, defects and misuse of safety systems

Damage or other defects on the truck or attachment must be reported to the supervisor or responsible fleet manager immediately so that they can have the defect rectified.

Trucks and attachments that are not functional or safe to drive may not be used until they have been properly repaired.

Do not remove or deactivate safety systems and switches.

Fixed set values may only be changed with the approval of the manufacturer.

Work on the electrical system (e.g. connecting a radio, additional headlights etc.) is only permitted with the manufacturer’s written approval. All electrical system interventions must be documented.

Even if they are removable, roof panels may not be removed, as they are designed to protect against small falling objects.

Tyres

⚠️ DANGER

Risk to stability!
Failure to observe the following information and instructions can lead to a loss of stability. The truck may tip over, risk of accident!

The following factors can lead to a loss of stability and are therefore prohibited:

- Different tyres on the same axle, e.g. pneumatic tyres and superelastic tyres
- Tyres not approved by the manufacturer
- Excessive tyre wear
- Tyres of inferior quality
- Changing rim wheel parts
- Combining rim wheel parts from different manufacturers
Basic principles for safe operation

The following rules must be observed to ensure stability:

• Only use tyres with equal and permitted levels of wear on the same axle
• Only use wheels and tyres of the same type on the same axle, e.g. only superelastic tyres
• Only use wheels and tyres approved by the manufacturer
• Only use high-quality products

Wheels and tyres approved by the manufacturer can be found on the spare parts list. If other wheels or tyres are to be used, authorisation from the manufacturer must be obtained beforehand.

– Contact the authorised service centre on this matter.

When changing wheels or tyres, always ensure that this does not cause the truck to tilt to one side (e.g. always replace right-hand and left-hand wheels at the same time). Changes must only be made following consultation with the manufacturer.

If the type of tyre used on an axle is changed, for example from superelastic tyres to pneumatic tyres, the load diagram must be changed accordingly.

– Contact the authorised service centre on this matter.

Medical equipment

⚠️ WARNING

Electromagnetic interference may occur on medical devices!

Only use equipment that is sufficiently protected against electromagnetic interference.

Medical equipment, such as pacemakers or hearing aids, may not work properly when the truck is in operation.

– Ask your doctor or the manufacturer of the medical equipment to confirm that the medical equipment is sufficiently protected against electromagnetic interference.
Exercise caution when handling gas springs and accumulators

**WARNING**

Gas springs are under high pressure. Improper removal results in an elevated risk of injury.

For ease of operation, various functions on the truck can be supported by gas springs. Gas springs are complex components that are subject to high internal pressures (up to 300 bar). They may under no circumstances be opened unless instructed to do so, and may be installed only when not under pressure. If required, the authorised service centre will depressurise the gas spring in accordance with the regulations before removal. Gas springs must be depressurised before recycling.

- Avoid damage, lateral forces, buckling, temperatures over 80°C and heavy contamination.
- Damaged or defective gas springs must be changed immediately.
- Contact the authorised service centre.

---

**WARNING**

Accumulators are under high pressure. Improper installation of an accumulator results in an elevated risk of injury.

Before starting work on the accumulator it must be depressurised.

- Contact the authorised service centre.

---

**DANGER**

Risk of accident due to the incorrect selection of fork arms!

- The fork arms must match the depth of the load.

If the fork arms are too short, the load may fall off the arms after it has been picked up. In addition, be aware that the load centre of gravity may shift as a result of dynamic forces, such as braking. A load that is otherwise resting safely on the fork arms may move forwards and fall.

If the fork arms are too long, they can catch on loading units behind the load that is to be
Basic principles for safe operation

picked up. These other loading units then fall over when the load is raised.

- For help with selecting the correct fork arms, contact the authorised service centre.
Safety tests

Regular safety inspection of the truck

Safety inspection based on time and extraordinary incidents

The operating company must ensure that the truck is checked by a specialist at least once a year or after particular incidents.

As part of this inspection, a complete check of the technical condition of the truck must be performed with regard to accident safety. In addition, the truck must be thoroughly checked for damage that could potentially have been caused by improper use. A test log must be created. The results from the inspection must be retained until a further two inspections have been carried out.

The inspection date is indicated by an adhesive label on the truck.

– Arrange for the service centre to perform periodic safety inspections on the truck.
– Observe guidelines for checks carried out on the truck in accordance with FEM 4.004.

The operator is responsible for ensuring any defects are remedied without delay.

– Contact your service centre.

NOTE

Observe the national regulations for your country!

Insulation testing

The insulation of the truck must have sufficient insulation resistance. For this reason, insulation testing in accordance with DIN EN 1175 and DIN 43539, VDE 0117 and VDE 0510 must be conducted at least once a year as part of the FEM testing.

The insulation testing results must be at least the test values given in the following two tables.
Safety tests

- For insulation testing, contact the authorised service centre.

The exact procedure for this insulation testing is described in the workshop manual for this truck.

**NOTE**

*The truck’s electrical system and drive batteries must be checked separately.*

**Test values for the drive battery**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Recommended test voltage</th>
<th>Measurements</th>
<th>Nominal voltage $U_{\text{Batt}}$</th>
<th>Test values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Battery</td>
<td>50 VDC</td>
<td>Batt+</td>
<td>24 V</td>
<td>&gt; 1200 Ω</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 VDC</td>
<td>Batt-</td>
<td>48 V</td>
<td>&gt; 2400 Ω</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 VDC</td>
<td>Battery tray</td>
<td>80 V</td>
<td>&gt; 4000 Ω</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Test values for the entire truck**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal voltage</th>
<th>Test voltage</th>
<th>Test values for new trucks</th>
<th>Minimum values over the duration of the service life</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24 V</td>
<td>50 VDC</td>
<td>Min. 50 kΩ</td>
<td>&gt; 24 kΩ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48 V</td>
<td>100 VDC</td>
<td>Min. 100 kΩ</td>
<td>&gt; 48 kΩ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 V</td>
<td>100 VDC</td>
<td>Min. 200 kΩ</td>
<td>&gt; 80 kΩ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Safety regulations for handling consumables

Permissible consumables

⚠️ DANGER

Failure to observe the safety regulations relating to consumables may result in a risk of injury, death or damage to the environment.

– Observe the safety regulations when handling such materials.

Refer to the maintenance data table for the permissible substances that are necessary for operation (see ⇒ Chapter "Maintenance data table", P. 6-307).

Oils

⚠️ DANGER

Oils are flammable!

– Follow the statutory regulations.
– Do not allow oils to come into contact with hot engine parts.
– No smoking, fires or naked flames!

⚠️ DANGER

Oils are toxic!

– Avoid contact and consumption.
– If vapour or fumes are inhaled, move to fresh air immediately.
– In the event of contact with the eyes, rinse thoroughly (for at least 10 minutes) with water and then consult an eye specialist.
– If swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Seek immediate medical attention.
Safety regulations for handling consumables

**WARNING**

Prolonged intensive contact with the skin can result in dryness and irritate the skin!
- Avoid contact and consumption.
- Wear protective gloves.
- After any contact, wash the skin with soap and water, and then apply a skin care product.
- Immediately change soaked clothing and shoes.

**WARNING**

There is a risk of slipping on spilled oil, particularly when combined with water!
- Spilt oil should be removed immediately with oil-binding agents and disposed of according to the regulations.

**ENVIRONMENT NOTE**

Oil is a water-polluting substance!
- Always store oil in containers that comply with the applicable regulations.
- Avoid spilling oils.
- Spilt oil should be removed immediately with oil-binding agents and disposed of according to the regulations.
- Dispose of old oils according to the regulations.

Hydraulic fluid

**WARNING**

These fluids are pressurised during operation of the truck and are hazardous to your health.
- Do not spill the fluids.
- Follow the statutory regulations.
- Do not allow the fluids to come into contact with hot engine parts.
**WARNING**

These fluids are pressurised during operation of the truck and are hazardous to your health.

- Do not allow the fluids to come into contact with the skin.
- Avoid inhaling spray.
- Penetration of pressurised fluids into the skin is particularly dangerous if these fluids escape at high pressure due to leaks in the hydraulic system. In case of such injury, immediate medical assistance is required.
- To avoid injury, use appropriate personal protective equipment (e.g. protective gloves, industrial goggles, skin protection and skin care products).

**ENVIRONMENT NOTE**

*Hydraulic fluid is a water-polluting substance.*

- Always store hydraulic fluid in containers that comply with regulations
- Avoid spills
- Spilt hydraulic fluid should be removed immediately with oil-binding agents and disposed of according to the regulations
- Dispose of old hydraulic fluid according to the regulations

**Battery acid**

**WARNING**

Battery acid contains dissolved sulphuric acid. This is toxic.

- Avoid touching or swallowing the battery acid at all costs.
- In case of injury, seek medical advice immediately.
Safety regulations for handling consumables

⚠️ WARNING
Battery acid contains dissolved sulphuric acid. This is corrosive.
- When working with battery acid, use appropriate PSA (rubber gloves, apron, protection goggles).
- When working with battery acid, never wear a watch or jewellery.
- Do not allow any acid to get onto clothing or skin or into the eyes. If this does happen, rinse immediately with plenty of clean water.
- In case of injury, seek medical advice immediately.
- Immediately rinse away spilt battery acid with plenty of water.
- Follow the statutory regulations.

⚠️ ENVIRONMENT NOTE
- Dispose of used battery acid in line with the applicable regulations.

Coolant and cooling fluid

⚠️ WARNING
Coolant and cooling fluid can be hazardous to your health and the environment!
Coolants are chemical corrosion inhibitors and cooling system protecting agents such as Glyssantin. Cooling fluid is an appropriate mixture of water and coolant. Coolant in both concentrated and dilute form can be hazardous to your health if swallowed, or hazardous to the environment if spilled.
- Store coolant and cooling fluid only in their original containers and do not spill them.
- Never store coolant or cooling fluid in empty food containers, bottles or other containers.
- Observe the national regulations for the country of use.

⚠️ ENVIRONMENT NOTE
-
Safety regulations for handling consumables

– Soak up any spilt coolant or cooling fluid immediately using an oil binding agent and dispose of it in accordance with the national regulations for the country of use.

– Dispose of old coolant or cooling fluid in accordance with the national regulations for the country of use.

Disposal of consumables

**ENVIRONMENT NOTE**

*Materials that accumulate during repair, maintenance and cleaning must be collected properly and disposed of in accordance with the national regulations for the country in which the truck is being used. Work must only be carried out in areas designated for that purpose. Care must be taken to minimise any environmental pollution.*

– Soak up any spilt fluids such as hydraulic oil or gearbox oil immediately using an oil-binding agent.

– Neutralise any spilt battery acid immediately.

– Always observe national regulations concerning the disposal of used oil.
Emissions

The values specified apply to a standard truck (compare the specifications in the "Technical data" chapter). Different tyres, lift masts, additional units etc. may produce different values.

Noise emissions

The values were determined based on measuring procedures from the standard EN 12053 "Safety of industrial trucks. Test methods for measuring noise emissions", based on EN 12001, EN ISO 3744 and the requirements of EN ISO 4871.

This machine emits the following sound pressure level:

**Continuous sound pressure level in the driver’s compartment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>L_{PAZ}</th>
<th>Measurement uncertainty K_{PA}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 70 dB(A)</td>
<td>4 dB(A)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The values were determined in the test cycle on an identical machine from the weighted values for operating statuses and idling.

Time proportions:

- Lifting 18%
- Idling 58%
- Driving 24%

However, the noise levels indicated on the truck cannot be used to determine the noise emissions at workplaces according to the most recent version of Directive 2003/10/EC (daily personal noise pollution). If necessary, these noise emissions should be determined by the operating company directly at the workplace under the actual conditions there (additional noise sources, special application conditions, sound reflections).

**NOTE**

Please note the definition of “operating company” in the sense of responsible persons!
Vibrations

The vibrations of the machine have been determined on an identical machine in accordance with the standards DIN EN 13059 "Safety of industrial trucks - Test methods for measuring vibration" and DIN EN 12096 "Mechanical vibration - Declaration and verification of vibration emission values".

**Frequency-weighted effective value of acceleration on the seat**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MSG 65 driver's seat</th>
<th>Measurement uncertainty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.31 m/s²</td>
<td>0.093 m/s²</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tests have indicated that the amplitude of the hand and arm vibrations on the steering wheel or the operating devices in trucks is less than 2.5 m/s². There are therefore no measurement guidelines for these measurements.

The personal vibration load on the driver over a working day must be determined by the operating company at the actual place of use in accordance with Directiv e2002/44/EC, in order to consider all additional influences, such as driving route, intensity of use etc.

**NOTE**

Please note the definition of "operating company" in the sense of responsible persons!
Battery

⚠️ DANGER
Risk of explosion due to flammable gases!

During charging, the battery releases a mixture of oxygen and hydrogen (oxyhydrogen gas). This gas mixture is explosive and must not be ignited.

- Make sure that there is always sufficient ventilation in working areas that are entirely or partially enclosed.
- Keep away from open flames and flying sparks.
- Do not smoke.
- Observe the safety regulations for handling the battery.
4

Overviews
1 Lift mast
2 Driver’s compartment
3 Overhead guard
4 Left side cover
5 Steering axle
6 Drive axle
7 Tilt cylinder
8 Fork arms
9 Fork carriage
10 Lift cylinder
Overview of the driver’s compartment

1 Parking brake lever
2 Steering wheel
3 Key switch
4 Display and operating unit
5 Document holder
6 Operating devices for hydraulic and traction functions
7 Emergency off switch
8 Compartment
9 Bottle holder for max. 1.5 l bottles
10 Driver’s seat
11 Compartment and potential storage location for operating instructions
12 Compartment
13 Filler cap for windscreen washer reservoir
14 Accelerator pedal
15 Brake pedal
16 Steering column adjustment

NOTE
The truck equipment may differ from the equipment shown.
Operating and display elements

Display operating unit

1 Hazard warning system button
2 Front windscreen wiper button
3 Working spotlight button
4 Drive programme selector button
5 Lighting button
6 Lighting symbol
7 Not assigned
8 Battery charge display
9 Drive programme display (numerical)
10 Left direction indicator light
11 Forward travel display
12 Right direction indicator light
13 Malfunction display
14 Reverse travel display
15 Power rating display
16 Time display (digital)
17 Not assigned
18 Rotating beacon display
19 Interior light display
20 Rear window heating display
21 Interior light/rotating beacon button
22 Rear window heating button
23 Menu change button
24 Lighting button
25 Blue-Q button
26 Rear window wiper button

NOTE

The buttons (5, 21, 22) and the corresponding indicators (6, 7, 18, 19, 20) are assigned according to the auxiliary equipment installed.

The assignment shown here is an example and may differ from the assignment actually programmed on the truck. Buttons may be assigned multiple functions that are called up according to the menu navigation. For further information, see the section entitled "Operating the display and operating unit".
– If you have any questions, please contact your authorised service centre.

**Operating devices for hydraulic and driving functions**

Different versions of the operating devices are available for operating the truck’s hydraulic and traction functions.

The truck can be equipped with the following operating devices:
- Double mini-lever
- Triple mini-lever
- Quadruple mini-lever
- Joystick 4Plus
- Fingertip switch
- Mini-console
Operating and display elements

Double mini-lever

1. "Lift mast" 360° lever
2. Function key F1
3. Function key F2
4. "Drive direction / turn indicator" cross lever
5. Function key "5th function"
6. "Attachments" cross lever
7. Emergency stop switch
8. Signal horn button

NOTE

Depending on the specification, various electric attachment parts can be controlled via function keys (2) and (3). Changes must only be made by the authorised service centre.
Three-way mini-lever

1. "Lift mast" 360° lever
2. Function key F1
3. Function key F2
4. "Drive direction / turn indicator" cross lever
5. Function key "5th function"
6. "Auxiliary hydraulics 1" operating lever
7. "Auxiliary hydraulics 2" operating lever
8. Emergency stop switch
9. Signal horn button

**NOTE**

Depending on the specification, various electric attachment parts can be controlled via function keys (2) and (3). Changes must only be made by the authorised service centre.
### Operating and display elements

#### Four-way mini-lever

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;Lift/lower&quot; operating lever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;Tilt&quot; operating lever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Function key F1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Function key F2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>&quot;Drive direction / turn indicator&quot; cross lever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Function key &quot;5th function&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>&quot;Auxiliary hydraulics 1&quot; operating lever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>&quot;Auxiliary hydraulics 2&quot; operating lever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Emergency stop switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Signal horn button</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

Depending on the specification, various electric attachment parts can be controlled via function keys (3) and (4). Changes must only be made by the authorised service centre.
Joystick 4Plus

1. Horizontal rocker button for "3rd hydraulic function", tilt the lift mast
2. Pictograms for the basic hydraulic functions
3. Pictograms for the 5th hydraulic function and the clamp locking mechanism (variant)
4. Pictograms for the 3rd & 4th hydraulic functions
5. LED for clamp locking mechanism (variant)
6. Slider for the "4th hydraulic function", e.g. reach frame forwards/backwards
7. Vertical rocker button for the "drive direction"
8. Shift key "F"
9. Signal horn button
Fingertip

1. Function key F1
2. Function key F2
3. Left-hand turn indicator button
4. Signal horn button
5. Right-hand turn indicator button
6. Button for 5th function
7. Emergency stop switch
8. "Attachments" operating lever
9. "Attachments" operating lever
10. "Tilt" operating lever
11. "Lift/lower" operating lever
12. Travel direction switch

**NOTE**

*Depending on the specification, various electric attachment parts can be controlled via function keys (1) and (2). Changes must only be made by the authorised service centre.*
Mini console

The mini console is located on the steering column below the steering wheel.

1  Travel direction switch
2  Direction indicator switch
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Identification points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Decal information: Caution/read the operating instructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Warning sign: Danger due to shearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Decal information: Battery service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Warning sign: Do not stand underneath the fork/Do not stand on the fork/Danger due to shearing/Danger due to high fluid pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Decal information: Hydraulic oil tank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Decal information: Attachment capacity rating plate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Decal information: Inspection sticker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Decal information: FEM test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Decal information: Caution/Read the operating instructions/Fasten seat belt/Apply parking brake when leaving the truck/Passengers are not allowed/Do not jump off if the truck is tipping over/Lean in the opposite direction to which the truck is tipping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Manufacturer’s label text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Decal information: Nameplate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Decal information: Capacity rating plate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Decal information: Lifting gear attachment point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Warning sign: Actuate accumulator/brake pedal 30x/Read operating instructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Decal information: Tyre filling pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Decal information: StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) information (variant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Warning sign: Danger due to shearing/Danger due to high fluid pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Manufacturer’s label text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Warning sign: Risk of short circuit due to shearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Warning sign: Do not stand underneath the fork/Do not stand on the fork</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Decal information: To unlock, turn 90° to the right/to lock, turn 90° to the left</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Identification points

Nameplate

The truck can be identified from the information on the nameplate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Production number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Year of manufacture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Tare weight in kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Max. permissible battery weight in kg (for electric forklift trucks only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Min. permissible battery weight in kg (for electric forklift trucks only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Ballast weight in kg (for electric forklift trucks only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Refer to the technical data listed in these operating instructions for more detailed information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>CE labelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Nominal drive power in kW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Battery voltage in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Rated capacity in kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Production number

**NOTE**

The production number is used to identify the truck. It can be found on the nameplate and must be referred to in all technical questions.

The production number contains the following coded information:

1. Production location
2. Model
3. Year of manufacture
4. Sequential number

StVZO (Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) information

This label includes information on the weight and load distribution of the truck.

1. Tare weight (in kg)
2. Permitted total weight (in kg)
3. Permitted front axle weight (in kg)
4. Permitted rear axle weight (in kg)
5. Payload (in kg)
Identification points
5

Operation
Checks and tasks to be carried out prior to commissioning

Visual inspections

⚠️ WARNING
Risk of accident due to damage or other defects on the truck or on the attachment (variant)!
Damage to the truck or the attachment (variant) can lead to unpredictable and dangerous situations. If damage or other defects are identified on the truck or attachment (variant) during the following inspections, the truck must not be used until it has been properly repaired.

- Do not remove or deactivate safety systems or switches.
- Do not change any predefined set values.
- Do not use the truck until it has been properly repaired.

⚠️ WARNING
There is a risk of falling when working on high parts of the truck.

- Use only the steps provided on the truck.
- Do not stand on truck components or use them to help you climb onto the truck.
- Use suitable equipment.

Prior to commissioning, ensure that the truck is safe to be operated:

- The fork arms must be secured against lifting and shifting
- The locking devices (1) of the fork arms must not be damaged or deformed
- Fork arms and other lifting accessories must not show any noticeable damage (e.g. bends, cracks, significant wear)
- The roller tracks (2) must be lubricated with a visible grease film
- The chains must not be damaged and must be evenly and adequately tensioned
- Check the area under the truck for leaking consumables
- The guard grille (variant) and overhead guard must be undamaged and securely mounted
• Attachments (variant) must be properly mounted and function according to the operating instructions
• All decal information signs must be in place and legible. Replace damaged or missing adhesive labels in accordance with the overview in the "Identification points" chapter.
• Any warning units (e.g. signal horn) must be in perfect condition and function correctly
• Check the visible areas of the hydraulic system and hydraulic oil tank for damage and leaks. Damaged hoses must be replaced
• The battery must be positioned securely in the battery tray.
• Check the battery male connector for damage (e.g. cracks, breaks or deformation of the housing, and whether the contacts are bent or damaged). If necessary, have the battery male connector replaced by the authorised service centre
• The battery cover must be securely closed
• The battery lock and the indexing bolt for the battery base frame must not be damaged or deformed
• The battery base frame, battery tray and battery cover must not be damaged or deformed
• The maintenance lids must be closed
• Steps must be clean and free of ice
• Any panes of glass (variant, e.g. windscreen) must be clean and free of ice
• Depending on the tyres, the truck may be fitted with an antistatic belt. The antistatic belt must not be damaged. It must also be clean and long enough to touch the ground
• The coupling pin in the counterweight must show no noticeable damage (e.g. bends, cracks or breaks). The securing bush in the counterweight must be present
• A tow coupling (variant) must show no noticeable damage (e.g. coupling pin bent, cracks or breaks). Every removable coupling pin must be secured against loss with a securing device (e.g. a chain, a split pin or a rope)
Checks and tasks to be carried out prior to commissioning

- The exhaust air grille on the cover of the rear weight must not be covered. It must be kept free of debris such as leaves or similar deposits.
- Damage or other defects on the truck or attachment (variant) must be reported to the supervisor or responsible fleet manager immediately so that arrangements can be made for the defect to be rectified.

**WARNING**

Risk of component damage!
A deformed or damaged battery male connector can cause overheating and related consequential damage.
- Check the battery male connector for damage.
- If necessary, have the battery male connector replaced by the authorised service centre.

**DANGER**

Risk of explosion if hydrogen builds up in the cab!
If the truck is equipped with a cab, hydrogen from the battery compartment can penetrate the cab through unsealed bores in the battery hood. A build-up of hydrogen can lead to explosions.

- There must be no unsealed bores in the battery hood. Sealing bores with plugs is not sufficient to prevent gas from escaping.
- Have unused bores in the battery hood sealed by the authorised service centre.

Filling the washer system

**CAUTION**

Components may become damaged due to the effects of frost!
Water expands when it freezes. If there is no anti-freeze in the washer system, the system may be damaged due to the build up of ice in freezing conditions.
- Always use washer fluid containing anti-freeze.
The windscreen washer reservoir is under the compartment behind the driver’s seat. The sight glass (1) displays the fill level.

- Open filler cap (2) for the windscreen washer reservoir.
- Fill the windscreen washer reservoir with washer fluid and anti-freeze in accordance with the maintenance data table; see ⇒ Chapter "Maintenance data table", P. 6-307.
- Close lid.
- Operate washer system until washer fluid is discharged from the spray nozzles.

Checking the condition of the wheels and tyres

⚠️ WARNING
Risk of accidents! With uneven wear or incorrect air pressure, the stability of the forklift truck decreases and the braking distance increases.
- Change worn or damaged tyres without delay.

⚠️ WARNING
Risk of tipping!
Tyre quality affects the stability of the truck.
If you wish to use a different type of tyre on the truck from the tyres approved by the truck manufacturer, or tyres from a different manufacturer, you must first obtain approval from the truck manufacturer.

⚠️ WARNING
Risk to stability!
When using pneumatic tyres or solid rubber tyres, rim wheel parts must never be changed and rim wheel parts from different manufacturers must not be mixed.
Checks and tasks to be carried out prior to commissioning

**NOTE**

Only approved types of tyre may be used; see chapter entitled "Tyres".

- Check tyres (1) for wear or damage.
  Tyres must not be damaged or excessively worn. They must be worn evenly on both sides.

- In the case of pneumatic tyres, check the air pressure. The air pressure indicated on the adhesive labels (2) must be observed.

**NOTE**

Observe the safety principles outlined in the chapter entitled "Tyres".

---

### Checking the coolant level

**WARNING**

Risk of scalding due to hot coolant!
The cooling system is pressurised! When you open the coolant reservoir, hot coolant can leak out. Only open the coolant reservoir when the cooling system is cold.

- Switch off the truck and allow it to cool down.
- Do not open the coolant reservoir until the engine has cooled down.

**CAUTION**

Risk of component damage due to overheating!
The power electronics and the hydraulic oil are protected from overheating by a cooling system. Loss of coolant from leaking coolant hoses or from the radiator reduces the cooling capacity and can cause components to overheat. If the coolant level is low, this indicates a leak in the cooling system.

- Check the cooling system for leaks.

- Remove the left side cover.
– Pull the locking pin (1) on the coolant reservoir (2) upwards.
– Pull out the coolant reservoir under the rear cover.
– Check the coolant level.

The coolant level should be between the upper mark (4) and the lower mark (5).
– Top up the coolant to the upper mark, but no further, if necessary.
– Make sure that the reservoir cap (3) is screwed on and tightly sealed.
– Push the coolant reservoir (2) back in until the locking pin (1) engages.
– Attach the left side cover.
Adjusting the MSG 65/MSG 75 driver’s seat

**DANGER**

There is a risk of accident if the seat or seat backrest shifts suddenly, which could cause the driver to move in an uncontrolled manner. This may result in unintentional actuation of the steering or operating devices and thus cause the truck or load to move in an uncontrolled fashion.

- Do not adjust the seat or seat backrest while driving
- Adjust the seat and the seat backrest so that all operating devices can be actuated safely
- Ensure that the seat and seat backrest are securely engaged

**WARNING**

On some equipment variants, the amount of head clearance on the truck may be restricted.
On these specific equipment variants, the distance between the head and the lower edge of the roofing sheet must be at least 40 mm.

**NOTE**

*If there are separate operating instructions for the seat, they must be followed.*

**WARNING**

To obtain optimum seat cushioning, you must adjust the seat suspension to your own body weight. This is better for your back and protects your health.

- To prevent injury, make sure that there are no objects within the swivel area of the seat
Moving the driver’s seat

- Lift and hold the lever (1)
- Push the driver’s seat into the desired position.
- Release the lever.
- Ensure that the driver’s seat is securely engaged.

Adjusting the seat backrest

Do not put pressure on the seat backrest while engaging it.

- Lift and hold the lever (2)
- Push the seat backrest into the desired position.
- Release the lever.
- Ensure that the seat backrest is securely engaged.

NOTE

The backwards tilt angle of the seat backrest can be restricted by the structural condition of the truck.
Adjusting the seat suspension

**NOTE**

The driver’s seat can be adjusted to suit the weight of the individual driver. In order to achieve the best seat suspension setting, the driver should perform the adjustment whilst sitting in the seat.

**NOTE**

The driver’s seat MSG 65/MSG 75 is designed for people weighing between 45 kg and 170 kg.

**NOTE**

The MSG 75 seat is equipped with electric air suspension that is activated using an electric switch instead of the lever (3).

- Fully extend the weight-adjusting lever (3)
- Pump it up or down to set the driver’s weight.
- Return the weight adjusting lever to the central initial position before each new lift (audible click).
- Fully fold in the weight adjusting lever once adjustment is complete.

**NOTE**

The driver’s weight has been selected correctly when the arrow (4) is in the centre of the inspection window. If the seat does not move any further when you pump the weight adjusting lever, the minimum or maximum weight setting has been reached.
Adjusting the lumbar support (variant)

**NOTE**

The lumbar support can be adjusted to suit the contours of the individual driver’s spine. Adjusting the lumbar support moves a convex support cushion into the upper or lower part of the backrest.

– Turn the turning knob (5) up or down until the lumbar support is in the desired position

Adjusting the backrest extension (variant)

– Adjust the backrest extension (6) by pulling it out or pushing it into the desired position.

To remove the backrest extension, move it past the end stop by jolting it upwards.
Switching the seat heater (variant) on and off

**NOTE**

_The seat heater only functions if the seat contact switch is active, i.e. when the driver is sitting on the driver’s seat._

- Switch the seat heater (7) on or off using the switch.

---

Adjusting the armrest

**DANGER**

There is a risk of accident if the armrest lowers suddenly, causing the driver to move in an uncontrolled manner. This can result in unintentional actuation of the steering or the operating devices and thus cause uncontrolled movements of the truck or load.

- Do not adjust the armrest while driving.
- Adjust the armrest so that all operating devices can be actuated safely.
- Ensure that the armrest is securely tightened.

Adjusting the length of the armrest

- Release the star-grip handle (1) by turning it anti-clockwise.
- Shift the armrest (2) into the desired position.
- Tighten the star-grip handle by turning it clockwise.
- Check that the armrest is firmly attached.

Adjusting the height of the armrest

- Release handwheel (3) by turning it anti-clockwise.
- Shift the armrest (2) into the desired position.
– Tighten the hand wheel by turning it clockwise.
– Check that the armrest is firmly attached.

Adjusting the steering column
– Press down the steering column adjustment lever (2).
– Position the steering column (1) and pull the lever up again.

⚠️ DANGER
Risk of accidents!
– Ensure that the steering column is secure.
The steering column must click into place.
Never adjust the steering column while driving.
Commissioning

Climbing into and out of the truck

⚠️ **WARNING**

Risk of injury when climbing into and out of the truck due to slipping, striking parts of the truck or becoming stuck!

If the footwell cover is very dirty or smeared with oil, there is a risk of slipping. There is a risk of hitting your head on the overhead guard post or of your clothes becoming stuck when climbing out of the truck.

– Ensure that the footwell cover is non-slip.
– Do not jump into or out of the truck.
– Ensure that you have a secure grip on the truck.

⚠️ **WARNING**

Risk of injury when jumping out of the truck!

If your clothing or jewellery (e.g. watch, ring etc.) becomes stuck on a component while you are jumping out of the truck, this can lead to serious injuries (e.g. from falling, loss of fingers etc.). It is forbidden to jump out of the truck.

– Do not jump out of the truck.
– Do not wear jewellery at work.
– Do not wear loose-fitting workwear.

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Components may become damaged through incorrect use!

Truck components, such as the driver's seat, steering wheel, parking brake lever etc., are not designed to be used for climbing in and out of the truck and may be damaged due to misuse.

– Only use the fittings specifically designed for the purpose of climbing into and out of the truck.

ℹ️ **NOTE**

*The foot that the driver starts with when climbing into and out of the truck is crucial in ensuring this action is carried out safely. This will depend on the number of steps. Trucks with a single wheel on the front axle feature two steps. Trucks with two wheels on the front axle feature three steps.*
Climbing in and out of trucks featuring a single wheel and two steps

When climbing into and out of the truck, use the handles (2) and (4) for support. The overhead guard post (1) can also be used for support.

Always **climb into** the truck facing forwards:

- Grip handle (2) with your left hand and hold on.
- Grip handle (4) with your right hand and hold on.
- Place your right foot on the bottom step (5).
- Place your left foot on the top step (6).
- Place your right foot into the footwell (7).
- Enter the truck and sit down on the driver’s seat (3).

Always **climb out** of the truck backwards:

- Grip handle (2) with your left hand and hold on.
- Stand up from the driver’s seat and place your left foot on the top step (6).
- Grip the handle (4) with your right hand and hold on.
- Place your right foot on the bottom step (5).
- Place your left foot on the ground and climb down from the truck.
Climbing in and out of trucks featuring two wheels and three steps

When climbing into and out of the truck, use the handles (2) and (4) for support. The overhead guard post (1) can also be used for support.

Always climb into the truck facing forwards:
- Grip handle (2) with your left hand and hold on.
- Grip handle (4) with your right hand and hold on.
- Place your left foot on the bottom step (5).
- Place your right foot on the middle step (6).
- Place your left foot on the top step (7).
- Place your right foot into the footwell (8).
- Enter the truck and sit down on the driver’s seat (3).

Always climb out of the truck backwards:
- Grip handle (2) with your left hand and hold on.
- Stand up from the driver’s seat and place your left foot on the top step (7).
- Grip the handle (4) with your right hand and hold on.
- Place your right foot on the middle step (6).
- Place your left foot on the bottom step (5).
- Place your right foot on the ground and climb down from the truck.
Connecting the battery male connector

**CAUTION**

Risk of component damage!

If you connect the battery male connector with the key switch switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to corrosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens their service life.

- Do not connect the battery male connector while the key switch is switched on.

**CAUTION**

There is a risk of short circuit if the cables are damaged.

The battery cable must not be crushed when closing the battery cover.

- Ensure that the key switch is switched off.
- Open the battery cover.
- Hold the battery male connector (2) by the handle (1) and insert the battery male connector into the plug connection on the truck.
- Push the fastener (3) completely to the right to retract the battery male connector into the plug connection and to secure the battery male connector in position.
- Ensure that the battery cable cannot come into contact with the battery cover.
- Close the battery cover.
Unlocking the emergency off switch

- Pull the emergency off switch (1) until it is unlocked.

Switching on the key switch

**WARNING**

Before switching on the key switch, all tests and operations prior to commissioning must be performed without any defects being detected.
- Carry out checks and operations before commissioning.
- Do not operate the truck if defects have been detected; contact the authorised service centre.

**NOTE**

*When the truck is switched on, the maximum driving speed is restricted. The driving speed limitation is disabled as soon as the truck is steered out of cornering to drive in a straight line. To do this, rotate the steering wheel by approximately half a turn.*
– Insert switch key (1) into the key switch and turn to position "I".

This initiates a self-test. All lamps in the drive direction and turn indicator displays light up briefly.
When the key switch is switched on, the display shows the welcome screen in the set language until the truck controller has fully started up.

If the truck is ready for operation, the standard displays are shown.

If the truck is equipped with the "access authorisation with PIN code" variant, the display initially changes to the input menu for access authorisation.

**Standard display elements**

1. **Battery charge**
   The available battery capacity is shown in the display field.

2. **Drive program**
   The current traction program (1–5) appears on the display.

3. **Power rating**
   The average power consumption and consumption trends are shown in the display field.

4. **Time**
   The current time appears in the display field.

**NOTE**

*After connecting the battery, the correct charging state may not be displayed until the battery is placed under load in the form of driving or lifting operations.*

Additional information may appear on the display.

- If malfunctions occur, refer to the information in the chapter entitled "Display messages".
**Access authorisation with PIN code (variant)**

**Description**
Trucks equipped with the "Access authorisation with PIN code" variant are protected against unauthorised use by a five-digit driver PIN. Up to fifty different driver PINs can be defined so that the same truck can be used by different drivers, each with their own driver PIN.

**NOTE**
*The driver PINs are defined in a truck control unit menu that can only be accessed by persons with the corresponding access authorisation, e.g. fleet managers.*

Once the key switch has been switched on, the input menu for the driver PIN appears on the display and operating unit screen. All of the truck’s functions (driving, hydraulics, additional electrical installations and the display and operating unit displays) are blocked. The function of the hazard warning system (variant) is guaranteed. Enter the five-digit driver PIN (possible entries from 00000 to 99999) to enable the blocked functions. Once the correct driver PIN has been entered, the standard displays are shown. All of the truck functions are available.

The access authorisation can be configured in such a way that the driver PIN has to be re-entered each time the driver steps off the truck, in order for the truck to be operated again.

– Contact the authorised service centre on this matter.

The first driver PIN is preset to "11111" at the factory. All others are preset to "0xFFF" but have no function as the highest valid driver PIN is "99999". Persons with the corresponding access authorisation, e.g. fleet managers, can change the driver PINs in the corresponding menu.
NOTE

When first commissioning the truck, we recommend you change the access authorisation set at the factory. This is the only way to guarantee that the driver PIN is only known to persons with corresponding access authorisation.

The driver PINs are stored in the truck control unit. These are still available if the display and operating unit has been changed. The authorised service centre can use a diagnostic device to read out the driver PIN and, if necessary, restore the factory default driver PIN.

ACCESS CODE input menu

The driver enters the five-digit driver PIN (00000 to 99999) in this input menu.

The driver PIN is entered using the buttons (1). The digits entered for the driver PIN (2) are not visible, instead being represented by circles. If the driver PIN entered is correct, the familiar display appears with the standard display, and all truck functions are available.
If an incorrect driver PIN is entered, the message **INVALID** appears for a short time. When the message goes out, the driver PIN can be re-entered.

After three invalid entry attempts, the message **CODE DENIED** appears. The input is then locked for five minutes before another attempt can be made.
Defining the driver PIN

**NOTE**

The driver PIN can only be defined by persons with the corresponding access authorisation, e.g. fleet managers. In order for the fleet manager to define the driver PIN, the configuration menu must be accessed. The configuration menu is password-protected. After entering the password, the fleet manager can configure general settings for the truck. To change the password, see the chapter entitled "Changing the password".

- Push the drive program selection button (1) and the menu change button (2) at the same time.

**PASSWORD** appears in the display.

- Enter the four-digit password (factory default: 2777) using the buttons (1).

- Confirm the entry by pressing the **ENTER** button (2).
CONFIGURATION appears in the display.

– Use the drive program selection button (1) and the menu change button (3) to select the ACCESS CODE menu.

– Confirm your selection by pressing the ENTER button (2).

Selecting the driver PIN

In the ACCESS CODE menu, there are fifty possible driver PINs to choose from.

The digit sequences can be set or changed in the NEW CODE submenu.

Once the ACCESS CODE menu has been accessed, the CODE selection field (2) contains the number 1. The first of the fifty driver PINs can now be defined.

– Use the drive program selection button (1) and the menu change button (4) to select the desired driver PIN (1 to 50).

– Confirm your selection by pressing the ENTER button (3).
NEW CODE appears in the display.

- Enter the desired driver PIN using the buttons (5).

The digits entered do not appear in the display. Instead they are represented by circles in the NEW CODE field (6).

CONFIRM appears in the display.

The CONFIRM submenu is used to confirm the new driver PIN.

- Enter the new driver PIN for a second time in the CONFIRM field (8) using the buttons (7).

If the entry matches the new driver PIN previously entered, the system will accept the new driver PIN once the last digit has been entered. The display switches back to the ACCESS CODE menu.

Another driver PIN can be defined here.
If the driver PIN entered in the CONFIRM submenu does not match the driver PIN entered previously in the NEW CODE submenu, the message INVALID will appear.

The message will then disappear after a short time. The new driver PIN can be entered in the CONFIRM submenu for further confirmation.

After three incorrect entries, the CODE DENIED message appears.

The display switches back to the ACCESS CODE menu. The desired driver PIN must be re-defined.
Changing the password

It is recommended that you change the factory default password.

NOTE

The password can only be changed when the parking brake is applied.

- Push the drive program selection button (1) and the menu change button (2) at the same time.

PASSWORD appears in the display.

- Enter the current password using the buttons (1).
- Confirm the entry by pressing the ENTER button (2).
**Operation**

**Commissioning**

**Configuration** appears in the display.

- Use the drive program selection button (1) and the menu change button (3) to select the **Password** menu.
- Confirm your selection by pressing the **Enter** button (2).

**Password/Password Level** appears in the display.

- Use the drive program selection button (1) and the menu change button (4) to select the desired **Password Level** (2).
- Confirm your selection by pressing the **Enter** button (3).
NEW CODE appears in the display.

The four-digit password can be entered using the buttons (1).

⚠️ CAUTION

Do not enter the password 1777!
If this password is entered, the configuration options for the fleet manager are restricted to driver authorisations and cannot be reset independently. The authorisations can only be reset by the authorised service centre!

- Enter the new desired password using the buttons (1).

The digits entered are shown in plain text in the NEW CODE field (4).

- Confirm your selection by pressing the ENTER button (3).

In the NEW CODE field, -??- appears briefly. The new password is confirmed.

- To correct the new password, push the ESC button (2).

The display switches back to PASS-WORD/PASSWORD LEVEL.

- Repeat the process steps from PASS-WORD/PASSWORD LEVEL.

- To exit the configuration menu, push the ESC button repeatedly until the standard displays appear.
Operating the signal horn

**NOTE**

The signal horn is used to warn people against imminent danger or to announce your intention to overtake.

- Push the signal horn button (1).

The signal horn sounds.

Seat belt

**DANGER**

Even when using an approved restraint system, there is some residual risk that the driver might be injured if the truck tips over.

This risk of injury can be reduced through the combined use of the restraint system and the seat belt.

In addition, the seat belt protects against the consequences of rear-end collisions and falling off a ramp.

- We therefore recommend that you also use the seat belt.

**DANGER**

Only bracket doors (variant) or the driver’s cab (variant) with closed, fixed doors constitute a driver restraint system. Plastic doors (weather protection) do not constitute a restraint system!

If you need to open or remove the doors, you must use an alternative suitable restraint system (e.g. a seat belt).
**Fastening the seat belt**

**DANGER**

**Risk to life when driving without a seat belt!**

If the truck tips over or crashes into an obstacle and the driver is not wearing the seat belt, the driver may be thrown from the truck. The driver could slide under the truck or collide with an obstacle. There is a risk of fatal injury!

- Fasten the seat belt before every trip.
- Do not twist the seat belt when fastening it.
- Only use the seat belt to secure one person.
- Have any malfunctions repaired by the authorised service centre.

**NOTE**

_The buckle has a buckle switch (variant). In the event of an operating error or malfunction, the message **SAFETY BELT** appears in the display and operating unit, see the chapter entitled “Display messages”._

- Pull the seat belt (3) out of the belt retractor without jerking and fasten closely around the body over the thighs.

**NOTE**

_Sit as far back as possible so that your back is leaning against the seat backrest. The automatic blocking mechanism permits sufficient freedom of movement on the seat._

- Click the belt tongue (2) into buckle (1).
- Check tension of the seat belt. It should be close to the body.
Fastening on a steep slope

The automatic blocking mechanism prevents the belt from being extended whenever the truck is on a steep gradient. It is not possible to pull the seat belt any further out of the belt retractor.

- Move away carefully on the slope.
- Fasten the seat belt.

Releasing the seat belt

- Push the red button (4) on the buckle (1).
- Manually guide the belt tongue slowly back to the retractor.

**NOTE**

*Do not allow the seat belt to retract too quickly. The automatic blocking mechanism may be triggered if the belt tongue strikes the housing. It will then no longer be possible to pull the seat belt out with the usual force.*

- Using increased force, pull the seat belt around 10-15 mm out of the retractor to disengage the blocking mechanism.
- Slowly allow the seat belt to retract again.
- Protect the seat belt from dirt (for example, by covering it).

Malfunction due to cold

- If the buckle or belt retractor is frozen, thaw them out and dry them thoroughly to prevent recurrence.
**Using the driver’s cab**

**DANGER**

Risk of fatal injury in the event of falling from the truck if it tips over!

In order to prevent the driver from sliding underneath the truck and being crushed if the truck tips over, a restraint system must be in place and must be used. This will prevent the driver from falling out of the truck if it tips over. The driver’s cab constitutes a driver restraint system only if the cab door is sturdy and closed. Fabric-covered cabs (variant) with doors made of plastic or canvas do not constitute a driver restraint system and offer no protection from the consequences of the truck tipping over!

- Close the cab door before operation.
- If the door is open or has been removed, use a comparably secure restraint system.
- We recommend that you always use the seat belt.

**Checking the brake system for correct function**

**DANGER**

If the brake system fails, the truck is insufficiently braked or not braked at all, so there is a risk of accident!

- Do not commission trucks with a defective brake system.

**Checking the foot brake**

- Check pedal clearance:
  
  There must be a distance of at least 60 mm between the pressure point and the pedal stop.
  
  - Accelerate the truck without a load in a clear area; see "Driving" chapter.

---

**CAUTION**

The seat belt may be damaged by heat!

Do not subject the buckle or belt retractor to excessive heat when thawing.

- Do not use air warmer than 60°C when thawing.
– Press the brake pedal (1) firmly.
The truck must decelerate noticeably.

Checking the parking brake

⚠️ DANGER
If the truck rolls away, there is a risk of being run over and therefore a danger to life!
– The truck must not be parked on a slope.
– In emergencies, secure with wedges on the side facing downhill.
– Only leave the truck when the parking brake is applied.

– Check the function of the parking brake at walking speed or on a steep gradient by applying the parking brake.

The truck must remain stationary on the gradient with the parking brake applied. If the truck rolls in spite of an actuated parking brake, contact your service centre.

Checking the steering system for correct function

⚠️ DANGER
If the hydraulics fail, there is a risk of accident as the steering characteristics have changed.
– Do not operate the truck if it has a defective steering system.

– Operate steering wheel (1). The steering play while stationary must not be more than two finger widths.

⚠️ NOTE
If the truck is switched on with the steering wheel turned, the maximum driving speed is limited. Travel speed limitation is removed as soon as the steering wheel is moved out of a cornering position into the straight-ahead position. This requires a change in steering angle of about half a revolution.
Checking the emergency off function

⚠️ WARNING
There is no electric braking assistance when the emergency off switch is actuated!
Actuating the emergency off switch will de-energise the entire electrical system. The truck will not be held on a slope by the electric brake.
– Brake the truck by depressing the brake pedal.

⚠️ CAUTION
There is no power steering when the emergency off switch is actuated!
The truck is equipped with a hydraulic power steering system. When the emergency off switch is actuated, the hydraulic system is completely shut down. Steering forces are increased by the remaining emergency steering function.
– Steer with a higher level of force.
– Slowly drive the truck forwards.
– Press the emergency off switch (1).
The truck will roll to a stop.
– Brake the truck to a standstill by depressing the brake pedal.
– Pull out the emergency off switch (1).
The knob is unlocked and pops out. The truck performs an internal self-test and is then ready for operation again.
Zero adjustment of the load measurement (variant)

**NOTE**

A zero adjustment must be carried out in order to guarantee the accuracy of the load measurement (variant) at all times. Zero adjustment is required

- as part of daily commissioning
- after changing the fork arms
- after fitting or changing attachments.

**NOTE**

Accurate zero adjustment is only possible if the fork is not carrying a load. Do not take up a load yet.

**NOTE**

Accurate zero adjustment is only possible within the first lifting stage of the lift mast. When carrying out the zero adjustment, do not raise the fork more than 800 mm above the ground.

**NOTE**

Operation of the lifting system depends on which operating devices the truck is fitted with; see ⇒ Chapter "Lifting system operating devices", P. 5-131.

- Set lift mast to vertical.
- Raise the fork to a height of 300–800 mm.
Commissioning

– Keep button (1) for the "zero adjustment" pressed for at least four seconds; the "zero adjustment"(2)symbol will appear in the display.

**NOTE**

*During the following process, the fork carriage must be lowered slightly and then stopped abruptly. While doing so, the fork must not touch the ground, otherwise the zero adjustment will not be accurate. To stop the lowering procedure quickly, release the operating device for lowering so that it jumps into the zero position.*

– Lower the fork carriage slightly and release the operating device.

When the zero adjustment has been carried out correctly, the value "0 kg" appears in the operating unit display.

---

**Checking the vertical lift mast position (variant) for correct function**

**NOTE**

*The function check of the lift mast vertical position (variant) must be carried out every time a truck is commissioned.*

– Actuate function key (1) to switch on the comfort feature "lift mast vertical position".

Function display (2) must appear in the display.

– Tilt the lift mast backwards.

The lift mast must tilt back fully and move gently as far as the end stop.

– Tilt the lift mast forward.

The lift mast must tilt forwards and stop in the vertical position.

– Release the operating device to tilt and actuate again.

The lift mast must tilt forwards fully and move gently as far as the end stop.
Traction

Safety regulations when driving

Driving conduct

The driver must follow the public rules of the road when driving in company traffic.

The speed must be appropriate to the local conditions.

For example, the driver must drive slowly around corners, in tight passageways, when driving through swing-doors, at blind spots, or on uneven surfaces.

The driver must always maintain a safe braking distance from vehicles and persons in front, and must always have the truck under control. Stopping suddenly, turning quickly and overtaking at dangerous or blind spots must be avoided.

– Initial driving practice must be carried out in an empty space or on a clear roadway.

The following are forbidden during driving:

• Allowing arms and legs to hang outside the truck
• Leaning the body over the outer contour of the truck
• Climbing out of the truck
• Moving the driver’s seat
• Adjusting the steering column
• Releasing the seat belt
• Disabling the restraint system
• Raising the load higher than 300 mm above the ground (with the exception of manoeuvring processes during the placement into stock/removal from stock of loads)
• Using electronic devices, for example radios, mobile phones etc.
WARNING

The use of multimedia and communication equipment as well as playing these devices at an excessive volume during travel or when handling loads can affect the operator's attention. There is a risk of accident!

- Do not use devices during travel or when handling loads.
- Set the volume so that warning signals can still be heard.

WARNING

In areas where use of mobile phones is prohibited, use of a mobile phone or radio telephone is not permitted.

- Switch off the devices.

Visibility when driving

The driver must look in the drive direction and have a sufficient view of the driving lane.

Particularly for reverse travel, the driver must be sure that the driving lane is clear.

When transporting goods that impair visibility, the driver must drive the truck in reverse.

If this is not possible, a second person acting as a guide must walk in front of the truck.

In this case the driver must only move at walking pace and with extra care. The truck must be stopped immediately if eye contact with the guide is lost.

Rear-view mirrors are only to be used for observing the road area behind the truck and not for reverse travel. If visual aids (mirror, monitor) are necessary to achieve sufficient visibility, it is necessary to practise using them. For reverse travel using visual aids, extra care should be taken.

When using attachments, special conditions apply; see the chapter entitled "Fitting attachments".

Any glass (variant, e.g. windscreen) and mirrors must always be clean and free of ice.
Roadways

Dimensions of roadways and aisle widths

The following dimensions and aisle width requirements apply under the specified conditions to ensure safe manoeuvring. In each case, it must be checked whether a larger aisle width is necessary, e.g. in the case of different load dimensions.

Within the EU, Directive 89/654/EEC (minimum safety and health requirements for the workplace) must be observed. The respective national guidelines apply for areas outside of the EU.

The required aisle widths depend on the dimensions of the load.

For pallets, these are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Aisle width [mm]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>With pallet 1000 x 1200 crosswise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RX60-60</td>
<td>6341</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RX60-70</td>
<td>6342</td>
<td>4907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RX60-80</td>
<td>6343</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RX60–80 (LSP 900)</td>
<td>6344</td>
<td>4999</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The truck may only be used on roadways that do not have excessively sharp bends, excessively steep gradients or excessively narrow or low entrances.

Driving on gradients

⚠️ WARNING

Driving up and down longer gradients may cause the drive unit to overheat and switch off.

It is not permitted to drive up and down longer gradients due to the minimum specified braking values. The climbing capability values given below only apply to overcoming obstacles on the roadway and to short differences in level, e.g. ramps.

The truck may be driven on the following upwards or downwards gradients:
### Operation

#### Traction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Maximum gradient [%]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RX60-60 (LSP 600)</td>
<td>6341</td>
<td>With load 16.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RX60-70 (LSP 600)</td>
<td>6342</td>
<td>15.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RX60-80 (LSP 600)</td>
<td>6343</td>
<td>14.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RX60–80 (LSP 900)</td>
<td>6344</td>
<td>12.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LSP = load centre of gravity

The upwards and downwards slopes must not exceed the above gradient and should have a rough surface.

Smooth and gradual transitions at the top and bottom of the gradient should prevent the load from falling to the ground or the truck being damaged.

**Warning: Components may project beyond the truck contour**

Trucks are often required to drive through very narrow or very low spaces such as aisles or containers. The dimensions of the trucks are designed for this purpose. However, movable parts may project beyond the truck contour and be damaged or torn off. Examples of such components include:

- A folding roof panel in the driver’s cab
- Cab doors
- LPG cylinders that can be swung out

**Condition of roadways**

Roadways must be sufficiently firm, level and free from dirt and fallen objects.

Drainage channels, level crossings and similar obstacles must be evened out, and if necessary, ramps must be provided so that trucks can drive over these obstacles with as few bumps as possible.

Ensure manhole covers and similar covers have adequate load capacity.
There must be sufficient distance between the highest points of the truck or the load and the fixed elements of the surrounding area. The height is based on the overall height of the lift mast and the dimensions of the load; see the chapter entitled “Technical data”.

**Rules for roadways and the working area**

It is only permitted to drive on routes authorised for traffic by the operating company or its representatives. Traffic routes must be free of obstacles. The load may only be set down and stored in the designated locations. The operating company and its representatives must ensure that unauthorised third parties do not enter the working area.

**NOTE**

*Please note the definition of "operating company" in the sense of responsible persons!*

**Hazard areas**

Hazard areas on roadways must be marked by standard traffic signs or, if necessary, by additional warning signs.

**Setting the drive programme**

The driving and braking characteristics of the drive can be set on the display and operating unit.
Operation

Traction

– Push the drive programme button (1) repeatedly until the number of the desired drive programme appears on the display (2).

Drive programs 1–5 are available.

Essentially, the higher the drive program number is, the greater the driving dynamics.

The following drive programmes are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drive values¹</th>
<th>Drive programme</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum speed (km/h)</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration (%) (forwards/backwards)</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deceleration (%) (forwards/backwards)</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reversing (%) (forwards/backwards)</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake retardation (%) (electric brake booster)</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE

The maximum speed pre-set in the drive programme is technically dependent on the battery used. Depending on the battery type used, the preset maximum speed must be adapted by the authorised service centre. If the maximum speed is not adapted, it can lead to technical faults in drive mode.

• Contact your authorised service centre.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Battery designation</th>
<th>Maximum speed (km/h)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7 PzS 1085 PowerPlusLife®</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 PzS 1120</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Values applicable to the standard device. Values for variants may deviate from this data.
### Selecting the drive direction

The desired drive direction of the truck must be selected using the drive direction switch before attempting to drive. The method of actuating the drive direction switch depends on the operating devices included in the truck’s equipment.

Possible equipment variants include:
- Mini-lever
- Joystick 4Plus
- Fingertip switch
- Mini-console

**NOTE**

The drive direction can also be changed during travel. Your foot can remain on the accelerator pedal while doing so. The truck is then decelerated and accelerated again in the opposite direction (reversing).

The indicator for the selected drive direction ("forwards" (1) or "reverse" (2)) lights up on the display and operating unit.

### Neutral position

If the truck is stopped for an extended period, select the neutral position to prevent the truck from suddenly starting if the accelerator pedal is inadvertently pressed.

- Briefly select the drive direction switch for the direction opposite to the current direction.

The drive direction indicator on the display and operating unit goes out.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Battery designation</th>
<th>Maximum speed (km/h)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8 PzS 1240</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TENSOR® TCSM 2545</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTE

When the seat is vacated, the drive direction switch is set to "Neutral". To drive, the drive direction switch must be actuated again.

Actuating the drive direction switch, mini-lever version

- For the "forwards" drive direction, push the cross lever (1) forwards
- For the "backwards" drive direction, push the cross lever backwards

Actuating the vertical rocker switch for the "drive direction", joystick 4Plus version

- For the "forwards" drive direction, push the vertical rocker button for the "drive direction"(1) upwards (A).
- For the "reverse" drive direction, push the vertical rocker button for the "drive direction"(1) downwards (B).
Actuate the drive direction switch, fingertip version

- For the "forwards" drive direction, push the drive direction switch (1) forwards.
- For the "backwards" drive direction, push the drive direction switch backwards.

Actuating the drive direction switch, mini-console version

- For the "forwards" drive direction, push the drive direction switch (1) forwards.
- For the "backwards" drive direction, push the drive direction switch to the rear.

**NOTE**

Alternatively, the drive direction can also be selected using the drive direction switches on the operating devices.

Starting drive mode

**DANGER**

Being trapped under a rolling or tipping truck could cause fatal injuries!
- Sit on the driver's seat.
- Fasten the seat belt.
- Activate the available restraint systems.

Observe the information in the chapter entitled "Safety regulations when driving".
The driver’s seat is equipped with a seat switch. This checks whether the driver’s seat is occupied. If it is not occupied or in the case of malfunction of the seat switch, the truck cannot be moved and all lifting functions are locked. In such a case, the message **SEAT SWITCH** appears in the display-operating unit; see the chapter entitled "General messages".

- Lift the fork carriage until the necessary ground clearance is achieved.
- Tilt the lift mast backwards.
- Release the parking brake.
- Select the desired drive direction.

The indicator for the selected drive direction ("forwards" (1) or "reverse" (2)) lights up on the display-operating unit.

**NOTE**

Depending on the equipment, an acoustic signal (variant) may sound a warning during reverse travel, the warning light (variant) may light up or the hazard warning system (variant) may flash.
– Press the accelerator pedal (3).

The truck will travel in the selected drive direction. The speed is controlled by the accelerator pedal position. When the accelerator pedal is released, the truck decelerates.

**NOTE**

*If the following message appears in the display when the accelerator pedal is actuated:*

! PARKING BRAKE OIL PRESSURE, the service brake of the truck is not yet ready for use.

*• The driving speed is limited to 5 km/h.*

*• When the service brake is ready for operation, the message disappears. The speed limitation is cancelled.*

**NOTE**

*The truck can be stopped briefly on upward or downward gradients without actuating the parking brake (electric brake). The truck will then begin to creep downhill slowly.*

**DANGER**

*Risk of accident due to brake failure!*

The electric brake only functions while the key switch is switched on, the emergency off switch has not been actuated and the parking brake is released.

– Use the brake pedal if the electric brake malfunctions.
– Do not leave the truck without applying the parking brake!

**Changing the drive direction**

– Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.
– Select the desired drive direction.
– Actuate the accelerator pedal.

The truck will travel in the selected drive direction.

**NOTE**

*The drive direction can also be changed during travel. Your foot can remain on the*
accelerator pedal while doing so. The truck is then decelerated and accelerated again in the opposite direction (reversing).

**NOTE**

*In the event of an electrical fault with the accelerator, the drive unit is shut down. The electric brake (service brake) causes the truck to decelerate. The truck cannot be driven again until the accelerator pedal has been released and then actuated again, provided that the electrical fault has been corrected. If the truck still cannot be operated, park it securely and contact your authorised service centre.*

**Starting drive mode, dual pedal version (variant)**

**DANGER**

*Being trapped under a rolling or tipping truck could cause fatal injuries.*

- Sit on the driver’s seat.
- Fasten the seat belt.
- Activate the available restraint systems.

Observe the information in the chapter entitled "Safety regulations when driving".

The driver’s seat is equipped with a seat switch. This checks whether the driver’s seat is occupied. If it is not occupied or in the case of malfunction of the seat switch, the truck cannot be moved and all lifting functions are locked. In such a case, the message **SEAT SWITCH** appears in the display-operating unit; see the chapter entitled "General messages".

- Lift the fork carriage until the necessary ground clearance is achieved.
- Tilt the lift mast backwards.
- Release the parking brake.
Press the right accelerator pedal (1) to drive "forwards" and press the left accelerator pedal (2) to drive "backwards".

**NOTE**

*In the dual pedal version, any drive direction switches on the operating devices will not function.*

The indicator for the selected drive direction ("forwards" (3) or "reverse" (4)) lights up on the display-operating unit.

**NOTE**

*Depending on the equipment, an acoustic signal (variant) may sound a warning during reverse travel, the warning light (variant) may light up or the hazard warning system (variant) may flash.*

The truck will travel in the selected drive direction. The speed is controlled by the accelerator pedal position. When the accelerator pedal is released, the truck decelerates.

**NOTE**

*If the following message appears in the display when the accelerator pedal is actuated: ! PARKING BRAKE OIL PRESSURE, the service brake of the truck is not yet ready for use.*

- The driving speed is limited to 5 km/h.
- When the service brake is ready for operation, the message disappears. The speed limitation is cancelled.

**NOTE**

*The truck can be stopped briefly on upward or downward gradients without actuating the*
parking brake (electric brake). The truck will then begin to creep downhill slowly.

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of accident due to brake failure!
The electric brake only functions while the key switch is switched on, the emergency off switch has not been actuated and the parking brake is released.
- Use the brake pedal if the electric brake malfunctions.
- Do not leave the truck without applying the parking brake!

Changing the drive direction
- Remove foot from actuated accelerator pedal.
- Actuate the accelerator pedal for the opposite direction.

The truck will travel in the selected drive direction.

ℹ️ NOTE

In the event of an electrical fault with the accelerator, the drive unit is shut down. The electric brake (service brake) causes the truck to decelerate. The truck cannot be driven again until the accelerator pedal has been released and then actuated again, provided that the electrical fault has been corrected. If the truck still cannot be operated, park it securely and contact your authorised service centre.
Operating the service brake

The electric brake converts the acceleration energy of the truck into electrical energy. This causes the truck to decelerate.

Electrical braking recovers energy for the battery. This results in a longer operating time between charging operations and less wear to the brakes.

The truck can also be braked with the mechanical brake by actuating the brake pedal (2). In the first section of the brake pedal's travel, only the electric brake takes effect. As the pedal is depressed further, the mechanical brake is also activated and acts on the drive wheels.

⚠️ DANGER

If the service brake fails, the truck cannot brake sufficiently. There is a risk of accident!

If the driver notices that the electrical braking effect has reduced by 50% and that the drive torque has decreased to 50% of the normal level, a component failure may have occurred.

- Bring the truck to a standstill using the brakes.
  Use the parking brake if necessary to assist in this process.
- Notify the authorised service centre.
- Do not operate the truck again until the service brake has been repaired.

⚠️ DANGER

At speeds that are too high, there is a danger that the truck could slip or overturn!

The braking distance of the truck depends on the weather conditions and the level of contamination on the roadway. Note that the basic braking distance increases with the square of the speed.

- Adapt your driving and braking style to suit the weather conditions and the level of contamination on the roadway.
- Always choose a driving speed that will provide a sufficient stopping distance.

- Brake the truck by releasing the accelerator pedal (1).
- If the braking effect is inadequate, use the brake pedal (2) as well to apply the mechanical brake.
Actuating the mechanical parking brake

**DANGER**

There is a risk of being run over if the truck rolls away, and therefore a danger to life.

- The truck must not be parked on a slope.
- In emergencies, secure with wedges on the side facing downhill.
- Only leave the truck when the parking brake is applied.

**NOTE**

Once the parking brake is released, the previously selected drive direction is retained and is shown on the drive direction indicator.

**NOTE**

If you operate the accelerator pedal while the parking brake is applied and a drive direction is selected, the message PARKING BRAKE appears in the display.

**Apply the parking brake**

- Pull the parking brake lever (1) down fully and release.

The parking brake lever swivels back half the distance into the middle position automatically.

The parking brake is engaged and the wheels are blocked. Driving is no longer possible. The drive direction indicator (2) on the display and operating unit goes out.
Releasing the parking brake

- Pull the parking brake lever (1) down fully out of the middle position.
- In the lower lever position, pull out the lever knob and then guide the parking brake lever up fully.

**NOTE**

The parking brake lever swivels to the upper position automatically by means of spring force and should be guided only lightly by hand. If the adjustment is stiff, notify the authorised service centre.
Steering

⚠️ DANGER

If the hydraulics fail, there is a risk of accident as the steering characteristics have changed.
- Do not operate the truck if it has a defective steering system.
- Steer the truck by turning the steering wheel (1) accordingly.

Turning the steering wheel in the direction of arrow (A) steers the truck in drive direction (A).

Turning the steering wheel in the direction of arrow (B) steers the truck in drive direction (B).

For turning radius information, see ⇒ Chapter "Technical data", P. 339.
Reducing speed when turning (Curve Speed Control)

This function reduces the speed of the truck as the steering angle increases, regardless of the amount to which the accelerator has been actuated. If the steering angle is reduced again upon exiting the curve, the truck accelerates in line with how far the accelerator is depressed.

However, the function does not release the driver from the duty to approach a curve at a speed according to the following factors:

- The carried load
- The roadway conditions
- The radius of the curve

**DANGER**

The Curve Speed Control function cannot override the physical limits of stability. Despite this function, there still is a risk of tipping!

- Before using this function, familiarise yourself with the change to the driving and steering characteristics of the truck.

**DANGER**

Increased risk of tipping if the Curve Speed Control function is disabled! If the controller fails while the truck is in motion or if the controller is disabled, the truck will no longer automatically brake when steering.

- Do not turn off the key switch while driving.
- Actuate the emergency stop switch only in emergencies.
- Always adapt your driving style to the conditions.

Despite the Curve Speed Control function, the truck may overturn in extreme cases within the following situations:

- Cornering too fast on uneven or inclined roadways.
- Turning the steering wheel sharply while driving.
- Cornering with an inadequately secured load.
- Cornering too fast on a smooth or wet roadway.
Reducing speed with a raised load (variant)

This function (variant) reduces the speed of the truck with a raised load.
Lifting

Lifting system variants

The movement of the fork carriage and the lift mast heavily depends on the following equipment:

• The lift mast with which the truck is equipped, see ⇒ Chapter "Types of lift mast", P. 5-128
• The operating device with which the hydraulic functions are controlled, see ⇒ Chapter "Lifting system operating devices", P. 5-131

Regardless of the equipment variants of the truck, the basic specifications and procedures must be complied with, see ⇒ Chapter "Safety regulations when handing loads", P. 5-144.

Automatic lift cut out (variant)

Description:

The automatic lift cut out (variant) means that the load cannot be lifted above a preset height. This function uses a sensor that is welded on at the factory at the required lift mast limit height. Once attached, the height cannot be easily changed.

Application:

• If the ceiling of the building is lower than the maximum lift height of the truck, this variant can prevent the lift mast from accidentally hitting the ceiling, which can result in damage.
• If the truck is frequently used at a particular height, the work is simplified by the automatic lift cut out at this height.

NOTE

If a load is lifted very quickly, the fork carriage and load are moved approximately 15 cm above the position of the sensor due to inertia. This deviation is already taken into consideration at the factory when determining the position of the sensor.
**Operation**

**Lifting**

**Overriding and reactivating the automatic lift cut out**

If a load needs to be lifted to the truck’s maximum lift height and the automatic lift cut out function is not required, it is possible to override the lift cut out. It is automatically reactivated when the truck is switched off and back on again.

**To override the automatic lift cut out:**

- Press the "F1"(1) button on the display operating unit. The automatic lift cut out is now overridden and a load can be lifted to the truck’s maximum lift height.

**To switch the automatic lift cut out back on:**

- Press the "F1"(1) button again.

---

**Lift mast vertical position (variant)**

**Description**

If the truck is equipped with the "lift mast vertical position" comfort feature (variant), the driver can put goods, such as paper rolls, down vertically with precision and thus avoid damage when unloading. The tilt cylinders run into the end stops gently to prevent hard vibrations and impacts. Oscillating motions of the truck are minimised, thus increasing work safety. The lift mast vertical position reduces wear on various components and therefore reduces maintenance costs.
Risk of damage to property due to the lift mast colliding with racks or other objects!

- Before using the "lift mast vertical position" comfort feature, position the truck at a sufficient distance from racks and other objects.

The "lift mast vertical position" comfort feature consists of the following individual functions:

- Display of the "lift mast vertical position"
- Automatic approach towards the "lift mast vertical position"
- Gentle running-in to the end stops

**Display of the "lift mast vertical position"**

The driver can see the mast tilt on the display and operating unit screen. The bar in the display shows the current mast tilt relative to the "lift mast vertical position". The arrow above the bar marks the vertical position of the lift mast.
Automatic approach towards the "lift mast vertical position"

- Switch on the "lift mast vertical position" comfort feature via the button (1) on the display and operating unit.

- Tilt the lift mast forwards using the corresponding operating device. The lift mast stops automatically as soon as the preselected setting is reached for the "lift mast vertical position".

If the comfort feature is switched off, the lift mast tilts forwards past the "lift mast vertical position" without stopping.

If the lift mast is tilted backwards, it moves past the "lift mast vertical position" without stopping, regardless of whether the comfort feature is switched on or not.

Gentle running-in to the end stops

The lift mast is braked gently at the end of the tilt range. This prevents the lift mast from stopping harshly in the end position and reduces severe oscillating motions of the truck.

Tilting the lift mast forwards with the "lift mast vertical position"

- Actuate the button (1) to switch on the "lift mast vertical position" comfort feature; the function display (2) in the display shows the activated status.

- Tilt the lift mast forwards.

NOTE

The way in which the lifting system is operated depends on the operating devices included in the truck’s equipment; see the chapter entitled "Lifting system operating devices".
The lift mast is tilted forwards and stops as soon as the vertical position is reached. The arrow above the bar shown on the screen of the display and operating unit represents the "lift mast vertical position".

Tilt the lift mast forwards beyond the vertical position:

- Release the operating device for tilting and actuate again.

The lift mast is tilted beyond the vertical position up to the end stop. The current mast tilt is shown in the display and operating unit.

- To deactivate the "lift mast vertical position", actuate the button (1) again.

Tilting the lift mast backwards with the "lift mast vertical position"

- Tilt the lift mast backwards.

The lift mast is tilted backwards without stopping in the vertical position.

Possible restrictions on the "lift mast vertical position"

In some circumstances, the lift mast cannot move exactly into the preset vertical position. Possible causes include:

- Uneven ground
- Bent fork
- Bent attachment
- Worn tyres
- Severely deformed lift mast

The vertical position can be corrected by tilting the lift mast using the relevant operating device. If the vertical position has to be corrected frequently, the "lift mast vertical position" should be calibrated.
Calibrating the "lift mast vertical position"

- Set the lift mast to the required position.
- Press and hold the button (1) for the "lift mast vertical position" for at least five seconds.

The message "? VERTICAL POSITION" will appear on the display.

Storing the mast position:
- Press the drive program button (3).

The current mast position is stored.

 Cancelling calibration:
- Press the menu change button (2).

The calibration is cancelled.

Types of lift mast

One of the following lift masts may be installed in the truck:

Telescopic mast

During lifting, the lift mast rises over the outer lift cylinders, bringing the fork carriage with it via the chains (fork carriage rises twice as fast as the inner lift mast). The top edge (1) of the inner lift mast can therefore be higher than the fork carriage.

DANGER

Risk of accident due to collision of the lift mast or load with low ceilings or entrances.
- Note that the inner lift mast or load may be higher than the fork carriage.
- Note the heights of ceilings and entrances.
**Triplex lift mast (variant)**

During lifting, the inner lift cylinder moves up to free lift (3), and then the outer lift cylinders raise the inner lift mast up to the max. height (2).

⚠️ **DANGER**

Risk of accident due to collision of the lift mast or load with low ceilings or entrances.
- Note that the inner lift mast or load may be higher than the fork carriage.
- Note the heights of ceilings and entrances.

---

**Malfunctions during lifting mode**

**Incorrect extension sequence**

⚠️ **DANGER**

Risk of accidents!

With triple masts (variant), an incorrect extension sequence may occur, i.e. the inner lift mast may extend before the free lift has finished. As a result, the overall height is exceeded and damage may occur in passageways or from low ceilings.

An incorrect extension sequence may, for instance, result from:
- The hydraulic oil temperature being too low.
- The fork carriage becoming blocked in the inner lift mast.
- Blocking of the free lift cylinder.
- The chain roller becoming blocked at the free lift cylinder.
  - If the hydraulic oil temperature is too low, slowly actuate the lift mast functions several times in order to raise the oil temperature.

In the event that the fork carriage is blocked in the inner lift mast, or the free lift cylinder or chain roller are blocked, the cause of the blockage must be eliminated before resuming work.

- Notify your service centre
Load chains not under tension

**DANGER**

Danger caused by a falling load!
- Make sure that the chain(s) does (do) not become slack when lowering the load.

Slack chains can, for instance, result from:
- Resting the fork carriage or the load on the racking.
- Fork carriage rollers becoming blocked in the lift mast due to contamination.
- If the fork carriage or the load comes to an unexpected stop, lift the fork carriage until the chains are under tension again and lower the load at another suitable location.
- If the fork carriage rollers in the lift mast become blocked due to contamination, lift the fork carriage until the chains are under tension again. Remove the contamination before resuming work.

**WARNING**

Risk of injury!
- Observe the safety regulations for working on lift masts; see ⇒ Chapter "Working at the front of the truck", P. 6-312.

Hydraulic blocking function

The hydraulic blocking function ensures that all the functions of the working hydraulics are disabled whenever the seat switch in the driver’s seat is unloaded.

If the driver stands up from the driver’s seat, the blocking function prevents the hydraulic functions that:
- Lift the load
- Lower the load
- Tilt the lift mast
- Additional functions

Releasing the block on the hydraulics

Proceed as follows to release the block on the hydraulics:
– Sit down on the driver’s seat.

All the relevant functions of the working hydraulics will be available again.

**NOTE**

*If it is not possible to release the block on the hydraulics when the load is raised because of a technical fault, the load must be lowered using the "emergency lowering" mechanism before any further action is taken. Do not operate the truck again until the fault has been rectified by the authorised service centre.*

---

**Lifting system operating devices**

The method of operating the lifting system depends on the operating devices included in the truck’s equipment.

Possible equipment variants include:

• **Double mini-lever**
• **Triple mini-lever**
• **Quadruple mini-lever**
• **Joystick 4Plus**
• **Fingertip switch**

– The following information must be observed regardless of the equipment variant:

**DANGER**

*Reaching into or climbing between moving parts of the truck (e.g. lift mast, sideshifts, working equipment, load carrying devices etc.) can lead to serious injury or death and is therefore prohibited.*

– Observe the safety regulations for handling loads.

– Only operate the lifting system from the driver’s seat.
Controlling the lifting system using a double mini-lever

**DANGER**

Reaching into or climbing between moving parts of the truck (e.g. lift mast, sideshifts, working equipment, load carrying devices etc.) can lead to serious injury or death and is therefore prohibited.

- Observe the safety regulations for handling loads.
- Only operate the lifting system from the driver’s seat.

**Lifting/lowering the fork carriage**

To lift fork carriage:

- Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (1) in the direction of arrow (B).

To lower fork carriage:

- Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (1) in the direction of arrow (A).

**Tilting the lift mast**

To tilt the lift mast forwards:

- Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (1) in the direction of arrow (C).

To tilt the lift mast backwards:

- Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (1) in the direction of arrow (D).

**NOTE**

The symbols on the 360° lever show the direction of movement of the lift mast and the fork carriage when the 360° lever is moved.
Controlling the lifting system using a triple mini-lever

**DANGER**

Reaching into or climbing between moving parts of the truck (e.g. lift mast, sideshifts, working equipment, load carrying devices etc.) can lead to serious injury or death and is therefore prohibited.

- Observe the safety regulations for handling loads.
- Only operate the lifting system from the driver’s seat.

**Lifting/lowering the fork carriage**

To lift fork carriage:

- Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (1) in the direction of arrow (B).

To lower fork carriage:

- Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (1) in the direction of arrow (A).

**Tilting the lift mast**

To tilt the lift mast forwards:

- Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (1) in the direction of arrow (C).

To tilt the lift mast backwards:

- Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (1) in the direction of arrow (D).

**NOTE**

*The symbols on the 360° lever show the direction of movement of the lift mast and the fork carriage when the 360° lever is moved.*
Controlling the lifting system using a quadruple mini-lever

**DANGER**

Reaching into or climbing between moving parts of the truck (e.g. lift mast, sideshifts, working equipment, load carrying devices etc.) can lead to serious injury or death and is therefore prohibited.

- Observe the safety regulations for handling loads.
- Only operate the lifting system from the driver’s seat.

**Tilting the lift mast**

To tilt the lift mast forwards:

- Move the "lift mast" operating lever (1) in the direction of the arrow (A).

To tilt the lift mast backwards:

- Move the "lift mast" operating lever (1) in the direction of the arrow (B).

**Lifting/lowering the fork carriage**

To lift fork carriage:

- Move the "lift-lower" operating lever (2) in the direction of arrow (D).

To lower fork carriage:

- Move the "lift-lower" operating lever (2) in the direction of arrow (C).

**NOTE**

*The symbols on the operating levers show the direction of movement of the lift mast or fork carriage when the operating lever is moved.*
Controlling the lifting system using the joystick 4Plus

**DANGER**
Reaching into or climbing between moving parts of the truck (e.g., lift mast, sideshifts, working equipment, load carrying devices etc.) can lead to serious injury or death and is therefore prohibited.
- Observe the safety regulations for handling loads.
- Only operate the lifting system from the driver’s seat.

**Lifting/lowering the fork carriage**
To lift the fork carriage:
- Pull the joystick 4Plus (1) backwards (B).
To lower the fork carriage:
- Push the joystick 4Plus (1) forwards (A).

**Tilting the lift mast**
To tilt the lift mast forwards:
- Tilt the horizontal rocker button (2) to the left (C).
To tilt the lift mast backwards:
- Tilt the horizontal rocker button (2) to the right (D).
Fork-carriage sideshift
To move the fork carriage to the left:
– Push the joystick 4Plus (1) to the left (E).
To move the fork carriage to the right:
– Push the joystick 4Plus (1) to the right (F).

NOTE
The symbols on the joystick 4Plus indicate the direction of movement of the lift mast or the fork carriage.
Controlling the lifting system with the fingertip console

**Danger**

Reaching into or climbing between moving parts of the truck (e.g. lift mast, sideshifts, working equipment, load carrying devices etc.) can lead to serious injury or death and is therefore prohibited.

- Observe the safety regulations for handling loads.
- Only operate the lifting system from the driver’s seat.

**Lifting/lowering the fork carriage**

To lift fork carriage:

- Pull the "lift/lower" operating lever (1) backwards.

To lower fork carriage:

- Push the "lift/lower" operating lever (1) forwards.

**Tilting the lift mast**

To tilt the lift mast forwards:

- Push the "tilt" operating lever (2) forwards.

To tilt the lift mast backwards:

- Pull the "tilt" operating lever (2) backwards.

**Note**

The symbols on the operating levers show the direction of movement of the lift mast or fork carriage when the operating lever is moved.
Changing the fork arms

⚠️ **DANGER**

There is a risk of being run over if the truck rolls away, and therefore a danger to life.

- Do not park the truck on a gradient.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Change the fork arms in a separate, safe location on a level surface.

⚠️ **WARNING**

There is a risk of injury when changing the fork arms; the fork arms’ weight could cause them to fall on your legs, feet or knees. The space to the left and right of the fork is a danger area.

- Always wear protective gloves and safety footwear when changing the fork arms.
- Ensure that no one stands in the danger area!
- Do not pull on the fork arms.
- The fork arms must always be carried by two people; if necessary, use a hoist.

ℹ️ **NOTE**

- *For installation and removal, a transport pallet is recommended for supporting the fork arms. The pallet size depends on the fork arm size used and should be dimensioned such that the fork arms do not protrude after being placed on the pallet. This means the fork arms can be safely placed down and transported.*
- *Both fork arms can be pushed over onto one side.*
Operation 5

Lifting

Removal

– Select a pallet corresponding to the fork arm size.
– Position the pallet to the left or right of the fork carriage.
– Raise the fork carriage until the lower edges of the fork arms are approx. 3 cm higher than the height of the pallet.
– Actuate the parking brake and make sure it is applied securely.
– Turn the switch key to the left and remove it.
– Undo the locking screw (2) on the right or left.
– Pull the locking lever (1) upwards and push the fork arms outwards onto the pallet.

Installation

– Position the fork arms to the left or right of the fork carriage on a pallet.
– Push the fork arms onto the fork carriage from the outside towards the centre.
– Pull the locking lever (1) upwards and push the fork arms into the required position. Ensure that the locking lever snaps into place.
– Fit and tighten the locking screw (2).

⚠️ DANGER

There is a risk to life caused by a falling load or fork!

– Tighten the locking screw after every fork replacement.
– It is not permitted to drive or transport loads without the locking screw.

💡 NOTE

If the truck is equipped with the "load measurement" comfort feature, then a "zero adjustment of the load measurement" is imperative after the fork arms have been changed; see ⇒ Chapter "Zero adjustment of the load measurement (variant)", P. 5-101. Otherwise correct measurement of the load cannot be guaranteed.
Fork extension (variant)

⚠️ **DANGER**

There is a risk of being run over if the truck rolls away and therefore a danger to life.

- Do not park the truck on a slope.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Change the fork extension in a separate, safe location on a level surface.

⚠️ **WARNING**

There is a risk of crushing!
The weight of the fork extension can cause crushing or cuts on sharp edges or burrs.

- Always wear protective gloves and safety footwear.

⚠️ **WARNING**

There is a risk of tipping!
The weight and dimensions of the fork extension affect the stability of the truck. The permissible weights stated on the capacity rating plate must be reduced in proportion to the actual load distance.

- Observe load capacity, see the "Before picking up a load" chapter.

⚠️ **NOTE**

*If the truck is equipped with the "load measurement" comfort feature, a "zero adjustment of the load measurement" is imperative after the fork extension has been changed; see the "Zero adjustment of the load measurement" chapter. Otherwise, correct load measurement cannot be guaranteed.*
Attachment

**DANGER**

Risk to life from falling load!

At least 60% of the length of the fork extension must lie on the fork arm. A maximum 40% overhang over the fork arm end is permissible. The fork extension must also be secured against slipping from the fork arm.

- If the fork extension (1) is not secured with a securing bolt (2) and linch pin (3), the load with the fork extension may fall.
  - Push the fork extension completely to the back of the fork.
  - Make sure that 60% of the length of the fork extension is on the fork arm.
  - Always secure the fork extension with a securing bolt.
  - Always secure the securing bolt with a linch pin.
- Remove the linch pin (3) from the securing bolt (2).
- Remove the securing bolt from the fork extension (1).
- Push the fork extension onto the fork arms until it is flush with the fork back.
- Insert the securing bolts located behind the fork back fully into the fork extension.
- Insert the linch pin into the securing bolt and secure.

Removal

- Remove the linch pin (3) from the securing bolt (2).
- Remove the securing bolt from the fork extension (1).
- Pull the fork extension from the fork arms.
- Insert the securing bolt fully into the fork extension.
- Insert the linch pin into the securing bolt and secure.
Operation with reversible fork arms (variant)

⚠️ DANGER

Risk to life from falling load!
Standard fork arms are not structurally designed for reverse operation. If this instruction is not observed, it can lead to material failure and the load falling.
– Only work in reverse operation using reversible fork arms (1)

⚠️ WARNING

Risk of accident from slipping load!
Loads may slip on the reversible fork arms if there is no load support. A fork extension (variant) cannot be secured against slipping.
– Do not use a fork extension (variant)

⚠️ WARNING

Risk of accident from the truck tipping over.
When driving, the centre of gravity of the load (2) must not be higher than 600 mm above the ground. The truck may tip forwards when driving or braking.
– Only drive with a load centre of gravity up to a max. of 600 mm above the ground

ℹ️ NOTE

If the truck is equipped with the "load measurement" comfort feature, a "zero adjustment of the load measurement" must always be performed after the reversible fork arms have been changed. Otherwise, correct load measurement cannot be guaranteed.
Reversible fork arms (1) can be used to reach an additional lift height. The reversible fork arms are installed on the fork carriage in the same manner as standard fork arms. Loads may be lifted on and beneath the reversible fork arms. The mast is lifted and tilted in the same manner.

- Only work in reverse operation using reversible fork arms
- Do not use a fork extension (variant)
- If the "load measurement" comfort feature is available, perform a "zero adjustment of the load measurement"
- To drive, raise the load centre of gravity (2) to a max. of 600 mm above the ground
- Observe the information in the section entitled "Transporting suspended loads"
Handling loads

Safety regulations when handing loads

The safety regulations for handling loads are shown in the following sections.

⚠️ DANGER

There is a risk to life caused by falling loads or if parts of the truck are being lowered.

- Never walk or stand underneath suspended loads or raised fork arms.
- Never exceed the maximum load indicated on the capacity rating plate. Otherwise stability cannot be guaranteed!

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of accident from falling or crushing!

- Do not step onto the forks.
- Do not lift people.
- Never grab or climb on moving parts of the truck.

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of accident from a falling load!

- When transporting small items, attach a load safety guard (variant) to prevent the load from falling on the driver.
- Use a closed roof covering (variant) in addition.
Before taking up load

Load capacity

The load capacity indicated for the truck on the capacity rating plate may not be exceeded. The load capacity is influenced by the load centre of gravity and the lift height as well as by the tyres, if applicable.

The position of the capacity rating plate can be found in the chapter entitled "Identification points".

**WARNING**

The figures show examples. Only the capacity rating plates on the truck are valid!

The attachment of additional weights to increase load capacity is prohibited.

**DANGER**

Risk to life from the truck losing stability!

Never exceed the maximum loads shown! These values apply to compact and homogenous loads. Otherwise, the stability as well as the rigidity of the fork arms and lift mast cannot be guaranteed.

Improper or incorrect operation or the placement of persons to increase load capacity is prohibited.
Example
Weight of load to be lifted: 880 kg (3)
Load distance from fork back: 500 mm (1)
Permitted lift height: 5230 mm (2)

WARNING
Risk of accident from the truck losing stability!
The permissible load of the attachments (variant) and the reduced lifting capacity of the combination of truck and attachment must not be exceeded.
- Observe the special capacity rating plate information shown on the truck and the attachment.

Load measurement (variant)

Description
Knowing the weight of the load to be transported gives the driver greater security. If the truck is equipped with the "load measurement" (variant) comfort feature, the weight of the lifted load can be measured and shown in the display and operating unit.

Load measurement is possible only when the truck is at a standstill. Before performing a load measurement, the load must be raised to a height of 300-800 mm above the ground.
The load measurement has an accuracy of +/-3% of the rated capacity of the truck.

**NOTE**

In order to ensure accuracy at all times, a zero adjustment of the load measurement must be carried out. Zero adjustment is required.

- as part of daily commissioning
- after changing the fork arms
- after fitting or changing attachments.

**Performing the load measurement**

**DANGER**

Risk of accident from a falling load!
The load may fall if the load centre of gravity has not been taken into account or the load has not been picked up securely.

- Pick up the load securely; see the chapter entitled "Picking up loads".

**CAUTION**

If the weight determined by a load measurement exceeds the permissible residual load capacity of the truck, the truck cannot be operated safely.

- Set down and reduce load immediately.
- If necessary, use another truck with sufficient load-bearing capacity.

**NOTE**

Accurate load measurement is only possible under the following conditions:

- The hydraulic oil is at normal operating temperature
- The load is at rest at the beginning of the load measurement
- The load corresponds to at least 10% of the nominal load capacity in trucks with a load capacity of up to 2.5 t
- The load corresponds to at least 5% of the nominal load capacity in trucks with a load capacity of 3 t and over
- The lift mast is in the vertical position
- The fork is not raised to more than 800 mm above the ground
The method of operating the lifting system depends on the operating devices included in the truck’s equipment.

- Ensure that the truck has been in operation for a period of time before carrying out the load measurement.
- Set lift mast to vertical.
- Raise the fork to a height of 300–800 mm.
- Ensure that the load is at rest.
- Press button (1) for "load measurement"; the "load measurement" symbol (2) appears on the display highlighted in black.

If the truck is equipped with mini-levers or fingertip operation, the "F1" button can also be pressed as an alternative.

During the following process, the fork carriage must be lowered slightly and then stopped abruptly. While doing so, the fork must not touch the ground, otherwise the load measurement will not be accurate. To stop the lowering procedure quickly, release the operating device for lowering so that it jumps into the zero position.

- Lower the fork carriage slightly and release the operating device.

When stopping the lowering process the load must be cushioned in order to create a measurable impulse.
If load measurement has been carried out correctly, the determined load weight (3) is shown on the display of the display-operating unit.

**NOTE**

*If the load measurement is invalid, the value "-9999 kg" is displayed in the operating unit.*

---

**Picking up loads**

To make sure that the load is securely supported, it must be ensured that the fork arms are sufficiently far apart and are positioned as far as possible under the load.

If possible, the load should rest on the back of the fork.

The load must not protrude too far over the fork tips, nor should the fork tips protrude too far out from the load.

Loads are to be picked up and transported as close to the middle as possible.

---

**DANGER**

*Risk of accident from a falling load!*

When transporting small items, attach a load safety guard (variant) to prevent the load from falling on the driver.

A closed roof covering (variant) should also be used.

Removable roof panels may not be removed.
Adjusting the fork

- Lift the locking lever (1) and move the fork arms to the desired position.
- Allow the locking lever to snap back into place.

The load centre of gravity must be midway between the fork arms.
- Only actuate the fork prong positioner (variant) when the fork is not carrying a load.

Danger area

The danger area is the area in which people are at risk due to the movements of the truck, its working equipment, its load-carrying equipment (e.g. attachments) or the load. Also included are the areas where loads could fall or working equipment could fall or be lowered.

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of injury!
- Do not step on the fork.

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of injury!
- Do not step under the raised forks.

⚠️ DANGER

People may be injured in the danger area of the truck!

The danger area of the truck must be completely clear of all personnel, except the driver in his normal operating position. If persons fail to leave the danger area despite warnings:
- Cease work with the truck immediately.
- Secure the truck against use by unauthorised parties.
Transpoting pallets

As a rule, loads (e.g. pallets) must be transported individually. Transporting multiple loads at the same time is only permitted:
• when instructed by the supervisor and
• when the technical requirements have been met.

The driver must ensure proper condition of the load. Only safely and carefully positioned loads may be transported.

Transpoting suspended loads

Before transporting suspended loads, consult the national regulatory authorities (in Germany, the employer’s liability insurance associations).

National regulations may place restrictions on these operations. Contact the relevant authorities.

Danger of death from falling loads!
– Never walk or stand underneath suspended loads.

Suspension loads that begin to swing can result in the following risks:
• Impaired braking and steering action
• Tipping over the load wheels or drive wheels
• Tipping the truck at right angles to the direction of travel
• Risk of crushing of guide persons
• Reduced visibility.
DANGER
Loss of stability.
Slipping or swinging suspended loads can lead to a loss of stability and cause the truck to tip over.
– When transporting suspended loads, observe the following instructions

Instructions for transporting suspended loads:
• Swinging loads must be prevented by using the proper driving speed and driving style (careful steering, braking)
• Hanging loads must be hooked on to the truck in such a way that the harness cannot shift or release unintentionally and cannot be damaged
• When transporting suspended loads, suitable devices (e.g. guy wires or supporting poles) must be available so that accompanying persons can guide suspended loads and prevent the loads from swinging
• Take particular care to ensure that there is no one in the drive direction in the driving lane
• If, despite this, the load begins to swing, ensure that no person is placed at risk

DANGER
Risk of accidents!
When transporting hanging loads, never perform or end driving and load movements abruptly. Never drive on slopes with a suspended load. Transporting containers holding fluids as hanging loads is not permitted.

Load pick up

DANGER
There is a risk to life caused by a falling load or if parts of the truck are being lowered.
– Never walk or stand underneath suspended loads or raised fork arms.
– Never exceed the maximum load values specified on the capacity rating plate. Otherwise, stability cannot be guaranteed.
– Only store pallets which do not exceed the specified maximum size. Damaged loading equipment and incorrectly formed loads must not be stored.

– Attach or secure the load to the load-carrying equipment so that the load cannot move or fall.

– Store the load so that the specified aisle width is not reduced by protruding parts.

– Approach the racking carefully, brake gently and stop just in front of the racking.

– Position the forks.

– Set lift mast to vertical.

– Lift the fork carriage to the stacking height.

⚠️ CAUTION

Component damage possible!
When inserting the fork into the racking, ensure that the racking and load are not damaged.
Operation

Handling loads

- Insert the fork as far under the load as possible. Stop the truck as soon as the fork back is resting on the load. The centre of gravity of the load must be positioned between the fork arms in the middle.

- Lift the fork carriage until the load is resting entirely on the forks.

⚠️ **DANGER**

Risk of accidents!
- Beware of any people in the danger area.

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Component damage possible!
- Ensure that the roadway behind you is clear.

- Move backwards carefully and slowly until the load is clear of the racking. Brake gently.

⚠️ **DANGER**

Never tilt the lift mast with a raised load due to the risk of tipping!
- Lower the load before tilting the lift mast.
– Lower the load while maintaining ground clearance.

– Tilt the lift mast backwards. The load can be transported.
Transporting loads

**NOTE**

*Observe the information in the chapter entitled "Safety regulations when driving".*

**DANGER**

The higher a load is lifted, the less stable it becomes. The truck can tip over or the load can fail, increasing the risk of accident!

Driving with a raised load and the lift mast tilted forward is not permitted.
- Only drive with the load lowered.
- Lower the load until ground clearance is reached (not over 300 mm).
- Only drive with the lift mast tilted backwards.
- Drive slowly and carefully round corners!

**NOTE**

*Observe the information in the chapter entitled "Steering".*

- Always accelerate and brake gently!

**NOTE**

*Observe the information in the chapter entitled "Operating the service brake".*
– Never drive with a load protruding to the side (e.g. with the sideshift)!

### Setting down loads

**DANGER**

Risk of accident due to changed moment of tilt!
Please note that the lift mast can be tilted far enough forward with a raised load to cause the truck to tip over.

The load centre of gravity and the moment of tilt both change when the load slips. The truck may tip forwards.

– Only tilt the lift mast forwards with a raised lifting accessory when it is directly above the stack.

– When the lift mast is tilted forward, take particular care to ensure that the truck does not tip forwards and that the load does not slip.

**WARNING**

Risk of accident from a falling load!
If the fork or the load remains suspended during lowering, the load may fall.

– When removing from stock, move the truck far enough back so that the load and the fork can be lowered freely.

**NOTE**

If the truck is to be used to store a raised load with the lift mast tilted forwards, e.g. in a rack with sloping racking channels, an additional
Handling loads

Load capacity diagram must be created as the stability will be affected.

- Contact the authorised service centre on this matter.
- Drive up to the stack with the load lowered in accordance with regulations.
- Set lift mast to vertical.
- Lift the load to the stacking height.
- Drive the truck towards the rack carefully.

- Lower the load until it rests securely on the rack.

⚠️ **DANGER**

**Risk of accident!**
- Beware of any people in the danger area.
- Ensure that the roadway behind you is clear.
- Move the truck back until the fork arms can be lowered without touching the stack.
- Lower the fork while maintaining ground clearance.
- Tilt the lift mast backwards and drive away.
Driving on ascending and descending slopes

⚠️ DANGER

Danger to life!
On ascending and descending slopes the load must be carried facing uphill.
It is only permitted to drive on ascending and descending slopes if they are marked as traffic routes and can be used safely.
The driver must check that the ground is clean with a good grip.
It is not permitted to perform turns on ascending slopes, to approach them diagonally or to park the truck on them.
Drive at a reduced speed on descending slopes.
It is not permitted to put items into stock or to remove them from stock while on an ascending or descending slope.
The forklift truck should not be parked on a slope.
- In case of emergency, secure the truck with chocks.

Driving on lifts

The driver is only allowed to use this truck on lifts with a sufficient load capacity and for which the operating company (see ⇒ Chapter "Definition of responsible persons", P. 28) has been granted authorisation.

⚠️ DANGER

There is a risk to life from being crushed or run over by the truck.
- There must be no personnel already in the lift when the truck is driven into the lift.
- Personnel are only permitted to enter the lift once the truck is secure, and must exit the lift before the truck is driven out.
Determining the actual total weight

- Park the truck securely, see ⇒ Chapter "Parking the truck securely and switching it off", P. 5-286.

- Determine the unit weights by reading the truck nameplate and, if necessary, the attachment (variant) nameplate and, if necessary, by weighing the load to be lifted.

- Add the determined unit weights to obtain the actual total weight of the truck:
  
  Tare weight (1)
  + Max. permissible battery weight (2)
  + Ballast weight (variant) (3)
  + Net weight of attachment (variant)
  + Weight of the load to be lifted
  + 100 kg allowance for the driver
  = Actual total weight

- Drive the truck with the forks forwards into the lift without touching the shaft walls.

- Park the truck securely in the lift, see ⇒ Chapter "Parking the truck securely and switching it off", P. 5-286, to prevent uncontrolled movements of the load or the truck.
Driving on loading bridges

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of accident from the truck crashing!

Steering movements can cause the tail end to veer off the loading bridge towards the edge. This may cause the truck to crash.

The lorry driver and the truck driver must agree on the lorry’s departure time.

- Establish the departure time of the lorry.
- Determine the total actual weight of the truck.
- Before driving across a loading bridge, ensure that it is properly attached and secured and has a sufficient load capacity (lorry, bridge etc.).
- Ensure that the vehicle onto which you will be driving is secured to prevent it from shifting and that it can support the load of the truck.

Determining the total actual weight

- Park the truck securely.
- Determine the unit weights by reading the truck nameplate and, if necessary, the attachment (variant) nameplate and, if necessary, by weighing the load to be lifted.
- Add the determined unit weights to obtain the total actual weight of the truck:
  - Tare weight (1)
  - Max. permissible battery weight (2)
  - Ballast weight (variant) (3)
  - Attachment net weight (variant)
  - Weight of the load to be lifted
  - 100 kg allowance for driver
  - Total actual weight
- Drive slowly and carefully on the loading bridge.
Working with attachments

Fitting attachments

If the truck is equipped with an integrated attachment (variant) at the factory, the specifications in the STILL operating instructions for integrated attachments must be observed.

If attachments are fitted at the place of use, the specifications in the operating instructions of the attachment manufacturer must be observed.

If an attachment is not delivered together with the forklift truck, the specifications and operating instructions of the attachment manufacturer must be observed.

Before initial commissioning, the function of the attachment and the visibility from the driver’s position with and without a load must be checked by a competent person. If the visibility is deemed insufficient, visual aids such as mirrors, a camera/monitor system etc. must be used.

NOTE

Please note the definition of "competent person" in the sense of responsible persons!

CAUTION

Attachments must be CE-certified. If the truck is not fitted with an attachment-specific residual load capacity rating plate, and the operating devices are not marked with the relevant pictograms, the truck must not be used.

– Order the residual load capacity rating plate and pictograms from your authorised service centre in good time.

– The authorised service centre must adapt the hydraulic system to the requirements of the attachment (e.g. by adjusting the pump motor speed).
**DANGER**

There is risk to life caused by a falling load!

Attachments that hold the load by exerting pressure on it (e.g., clamps) must be additionally controlled by a second operating function (lock) that is actuated to prevent an unintentional release of the load.

If such an attachment is retrofitted, a second operating function for actuation must also be retrofitted.

- Make sure that the additional clamp locking mechanism function is available.

**DANGER**

There is risk to life caused by a falling load!

During installation of a clamp with integral sideshift, ensure that the clamp does not open when the sideshift is actuated.

- Notify your authorised service centre before installation.
- Never grab or climb on moving parts of the truck.

**Hydraulic connection**

- Before fitting the attachment, release the pressure from the hydraulic system.

**CAUTION**

Risk of damage to components!

Open connections of plug connectors can become dirty. The plug connectors can become stiff and dirt can enter the hydraulic system.

- Once the attachments have been disassembled, attach the protective caps to the plug connectors.

**Mounting attachments**

Mounting the attachment and connecting the energy supply for power-driven attachments must only be performed by authorised personnel in accordance with the information provided by the manufacturer and supplier of the attachment. After each assembly, the attachment must be checked for correct function prior to initial commissioning.

**NOTE**

Please note the definition of "competent person" in the sense of responsible persons!
Load capacity with attachment

The permissible load capacity of the attachment and the allowable load (load capacity and load moment) of the truck must not be exceeded in the combination of attachment and payload. The specifications of the manufacturer and supplier of the attachment must be complied with.

- Observe the residual load capacity rating plate, see the chapter entitled "Picking up a load using attachments".

Releasing the pressure from the hydraulic system

Prior to assembling attachments, the pressure must be released from the plug connectors (arrows).

Attachments must only be assembled by authorised personnel in accordance with the information provided by the manufacturer and supplier of the attachments. After each assembly, the attachment must be checked for proper functioning prior to being put into operation for the first time.

NOTE

The pressure release procedure is dependent on the operating devices for controlling the hydraulic functions; see the chapter entitled "Lifting system operating devices".
Releasing the pressure

**NOTE**

*In trucks with the "FleetManager" or "access authorisation with PIN code" equipment variants, access authorisation must be enabled.*

- Switch on the key switch.
- Lower the fork carriage.
- Switch on the hazard warning system (variant).

**NOTE**

*Press the button for switching on the hazard warning system even if the truck is not equipped with a hazard warning system. Switching on the hazard warning system prevents the electrical system from being switched off, even if the key switch is subsequently switched off.*

- Switch off the key switch.
- Actuate the operating lever (1) for controlling the hydraulic functions repeatedly in the direction of the arrow, as far as the end position.

The valves open and the hydraulic system is depressurised.
General instructions for controlling attachments

The way in which attachments (variant) are controlled depends on the operating devices included in the truck’s equipment.

Essentially, a distinction is drawn between:

- Double mini-lever
- Double mini-lever with a 5th function (variant)
- Triple mini-lever
- Triple mini-lever with a 5th function (variant)
- Quadruple mini-lever
- Quadruple mini-lever with a 5th function (variant)
- Joystick 4Plus
- Joystick 4Plus with a 5th function (variant)
- Fingertip switch
- Fingertip with a 5th function (variant)

For information on controlling attachments with the respective operating devices, see the relevant sections in this chapter.

⚠️ WARNING

Use of attachments can give rise to additional hazards such as a change in the centre of gravity, additional danger areas etc.

Attachments must only be used for their intended purpose as described in the relevant operating instructions. Drivers must be taught how to operate the attachments.

Loads may only be picked up and transported with attachments if the loads are securely grasped and attached. Where necessary, loads must also be secured against slipping, rolling away, falling over, swinging or tipping over. Note that any change to the position of the load centre of gravity will affect the stability of the truck.

- Refer to the capacity rating plate for the attachments being used.

ℹ️ NOTE

Further variants and functions are available in addition to the functions described below. The directions of movement can be seen on the pictograms on the operating devices.
NOTE

All the attachments described fall into the category of equipment variants. Please see the respective operating instructions for an exact description of the respective movements/actions of the attachment fitted.
Controlling attachments using a double mini-lever

The attachments (variants) are controlled in this version using the "attachments" cross lever (1).

The pictograms on the "attachments" cross lever show the respective functions that are activated by this lever.

This essentially involves the following:

- Move the "attachments"(1) cross lever in the direction of the arrow (A).
  The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (A).
- Move the "attachments"(1) cross lever in the direction of the arrow (B).
  The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (B).
- Move the "attachments"(1) cross lever in the direction of the arrow (C).
  The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (C).
- Move the "attachments"(1) cross lever in the direction of the arrow (D).
  The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (D).
– Note the following attachment functions and pictograms.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Move sideshift frame or fork forwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Move sideshift frame or fork backwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Move sideshift to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Move sideshift to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Swivel lift mast or fork to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Swivel lift mast or fork to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Release load retainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Clamp load retainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Push off the load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Pull in the load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Open clamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Close clamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Rotate to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Rotate to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Tip shovel over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Tip shovel back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

The pictograms shown correspond to the attachments fitted to this truck at the factory. If an attachment with other functions is fitted, the pictograms must be checked for the correct representation and changed if necessary.

– Contact the authorised service centre if required.
Controlling attachments using the double mini-lever and the 5th function

**NOTE**

The "lift mast" 360° lever and the "attachments" cross lever control four hydraulic functions. The "5th function" designation refers to the fact that switching functions using the "5th function" function key (1) control the 5th hydraulic function via the cross lever.

The pictograms on the "attachments" cross lever show the respective functions that are activated by this lever.

This essentially involves the following:

- Actuate the "5th function" (1) function key and move the "attachments"(2) cross lever in the direction of arrow (E).

The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (E).

- Actuate the "5th function" function key (1) and move the "attachments"(2) cross lever in the direction of the arrow (F).

The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (F).
– Note the following attachment functions and pictograms.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Move sideshift frame or fork forwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Move sideshift frame or fork backwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Move sideshift to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Move sideshift to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Swivel lift mast or fork to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Swivel lift mast or fork to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Release load retainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Clamp load retainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Push off the load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Pull in the load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Open clamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Close clamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Rotate to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Rotate to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Tip shovel over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Tip shovel back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

The pictograms shown correspond to the attachments fitted to this truck at the factory. If an attachment with other functions is fitted, the pictograms must be checked for the correct representation and changed if necessary.

– Contact the authorised service centre if required.
Controlling attachments using a triple mini-lever

The attachments (variant) are controlled in this version using operating levers (1) and (2).

The pictograms on the operating levers show the respective functions that are activated by these levers.

This essentially involves the following:

– Move the operating lever (1) towards (A)

The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (A).

– Move the operating lever (1) towards (B)

The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (B).

– Move the operating lever (2) towards (C)

The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (C).

– Move the operating lever (2) towards (D)

The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (D).
Note the following attachment functions and pictograms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Move sideshift frame or fork forwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Move sideshift frame or fork backwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Move sideshift to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Move sideshift to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Swivel lift mast or fork to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Swivel lift mast or fork to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Release load retainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Clamp load retainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Push off the load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Pull in the load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Open clamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Close clamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Rotate to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Rotate to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Tip shovel over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Tip shovel back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

The pictograms shown correspond to the attachments fitted to this truck at the factory. If an attachment with other functions is fitted, the pictograms must be checked for the correct representation and changed if necessary.

– Contact the authorised service centre if required.
Controlling attachments using the three-way mini-lever and the 5th function

**NOTE**

Four hydraulic functions are controlled using the "lift mast" 360° lever and operating levers (1) and (2). The designation "5th function" refers to the fact that the function change-over uses the function key (3), which then allows the 5th hydraulic function to be controlled with the operating lever (1).

The pictograms on the operating levers show the respective functions that are activated by these levers.

The meanings are as follows:

- Actuate the "5th function" function key (3) and move operating lever (1) towards (E).

The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (E).

- Actuate the "5th function" function key (3) and move the operating lever (1) towards (F).

The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (F).
– Note the following attachment functions and pictograms.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Rotate to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Rotate to the right</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

The pictograms shown correspond to the attachments fitted to this truck at the factory. If an attachment with other functions is fitted, the pictograms must be checked for the correct representation and changed if necessary.

– Contact the authorised service centre if required.
Controlling attachments using a quadruple mini-lever

The attachments (variant) are controlled in this version using operating levers (1) and (2).

The pictograms on the operating levers show the respective function that is activated by these levers.

This essentially involves the following:
- Move the operating lever (1) towards (A)
The attachment moves in the direction shown in pictogram (A).
- Move the operating lever (1) towards (B)
The attachment moves in the direction shown in pictogram (B).
- Move the operating lever (2) towards (C)
The attachment moves in the direction shown in pictogram (C).
- Move the operating lever (2) towards (D)
The attachment moves in the direction shown in pictogram (D).
Note the following attachment functions and pictograms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Move sideshift frame or fork forwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Move sideshift frame or fork backwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Move sideshift to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Move sideshift to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Swivel lift mast or fork to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Swivel lift mast or fork to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Release load retainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Clamp load retainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Push off the load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Pull in the load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Open clamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Close clamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Rotate to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Rotate to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Tip shovel over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Tip shovel back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

The pictograms shown correspond to the attachments fitted to this truck at the factory. If an attachment with other functions is fitted, the pictograms must be checked for the correct representation and changed if necessary.

- Contact the authorised service centre if required.
Controlling attachments using the four-way mini-lever and the 5th function

**NOTE**

Operating levers (1) to (4) are used to control 4 hydraulic functions. The designation "5th function" refers to the fact that the function change-over uses the "5th function" function key (5), which then allows the 5th hydraulic function to be controlled using the operating lever (3).

The pictograms on the operating levers show the respective functions that are activated by these levers.

The meanings are as follows:

- Actuate the "5th function" function key (5) and move operating lever (3) towards (E).
  
  The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (E).

- Actuate the "5th function" function key (5) and move operating lever (3) towards (F).
  
  The attachment moves in accordance with the pictogram in position (F).
- Note the following attachment functions and pictograms.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Rotate to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Rotate to the right</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

The pictograms shown correspond to the attachments fitted to this truck at the factory. If an attachment with other functions is fitted, the pictograms must be checked for the correct representation and changed if necessary.

- Contact the authorised service centre if required.
Controlling attachments via the joystick 4Plus

In this equipment, the attachments (variant) are controlled via the joystick 4Plus (1).

The pictograms on the decal information about operation of the joystick 4Plus show the respective functions that are activated by the individual operating devices of the joystick 4Plus.

– Note the following attachment functions and pictograms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating device</th>
<th>Function of the attachment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Joystick 4Plus</td>
<td>Move sideshift to the left/right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Joystick 4Plus or slider</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: open/close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Slider</td>
<td>Move reach frame or fork carriage forwards/backwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Joystick 4Plus or slider</td>
<td>Rotate attachment left/right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Slider</td>
<td>Tip shovel over/tip shovel back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

The pictograms on the joystick 4Plus are attached according to the attachments fitted to this truck at the factory. If an attachment with other functions is fitted, the pictograms must be checked for the correct representation and changed if necessary.

– Contact the authorised service centre if required.
Controlling attachments using the joystick 4Plus and the 5th function

- Note the following attachment functions and pictograms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating device</th>
<th>Function of the attachment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Horizontal rocker button + shift button &quot;F&quot;</td>
<td>Release/open clamp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

The 5th hydraulic function can be used to control an attachment. The pictograms on the joystick 4Plus show which attachment functions can be controlled using the 5th function.

For attachments that are controlled using the 5th hydraulic function, the procedures for operation are as follows:

- Press and hold shift key "F"(1) on the joystick 4Plus.
- Simultaneously actuate the horizontal rocker switch (2) in the direction shown in the pictogram so that the attachment moves accordingly.

**NOTE**

The pictograms on the joystick 4Plus are attached according to the attachments fitted to this truck at the factory. If an attachment with other functions is fitted, the pictograms must be checked for the correct representation and changed if necessary.

- Contact the authorised service centre if required.
Controlling the attachments with fingertip

The attachments (variant) are controlled in this version using the operating levers (1).

The pictograms on the operating levers always show the functions that are activated by that lever.

– Move operating lever (1) forwards.

The attachment moves in the direction of movement shown in the upper part of the pictogram.

– Move operating lever (1) backwards.

The attachment moves in the direction of movement shown in the lower part of the pictogram.

– Note the following attachment functions and pictograms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Move side shift frame or forks forwards/backwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Move sideshift to the left/to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: open/close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Swivel lift mast or forks to the left/to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Release/clamp load retainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Push off/pull in load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Open/close clamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Turn to the left/to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Tip shovel over/tip shovel back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

The pictograms shown correspond to the attachments fitted to this truck at the factory. If an attachment with other functions is fitted, the pictograms must be checked for the correct representation and changed if necessary.

– Contact the authorised service centre if required.
Controlling attachments with fingertip and the 5th function

NOTE

The designation "5th function" refers to the fact that the four operating levers control four functions, while the "5th function" can be controlled by switching functions.

The attachments (variant) are controlled using the operating levers (1).

You can also use the switch (2) to switch functions, in which case the corresponding operating lever controls the "5th function".

The pictogram (3) behind the operating lever shows in the upper and lower parts the function that is activated with this lever.

The meanings are as follows:

– Move operating lever forwards.

The attachment moves in the direction of movement shown in the upper part of the pictogram.

– Move operating lever back.

The attachment moves in the direction of movement shown in the lower part of the pictogram.

– Actuate the switch (2).

The additional function of the attachment is activated/deactivated and can be controlled as the "5th function" using the operating lever.
Working with attachments

– Press the function key (4).

**NOTE**

The arrow (5) under the function key indicates which operating lever is equipped with the "5th function".

The "5th function" is switched to the 3rd operating lever; see adhesive label (6).

– Press the function key (7).

**NOTE**

The arrow (8) under the function key indicates which operating lever is equipped with the "5th function".

The "5th function" is switched to the 4th operating lever; see adhesive label (9).

**NOTE**

The movement/action of this "5th function" can be found in the operating instructions of the fitted attachment.
Note the following attachment functions and pictograms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Move side shift frame or fork forwards/backwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Move sideshift to the left/right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Adjust fork arms: open/close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Swivel lift mast or fork to the left/right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Release/clamp load retainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Push off/pull in load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Open/close clamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Turn to the left/right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Tip shovel over/tip shovel back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

The pictograms shown correspond to the attachments fitted to this truck at the factory. If an attachment with other functions is fitted, the pictograms must be checked for the correct representation and changed if necessary.

- Contact the authorised service centre if required.

**Clamp locking mechanism (variant)**

This truck can be fitted with a clamp locking mechanism as a variant. This prevents the clamp from opening unintentionally if the operating function is inadvertently triggered.

**DANGER**

There is a risk of fatal injury from falling loads if the correct function of the clamp locking mechanism is not guaranteed!

If other attachments are used on this truck in addition to the clamp, make sure that the clamp locking mechanism function is reassigned to the corresponding operating device every time the clamp is reassembled; see the chapter entitled “Fitting attachments”.

- Make sure that the additional clamp locking mechanism function is available.
Double mini-lever

- To release the clamp locking mechanism, push the cross lever (1) forwards.

The LED for button F2 (2) lights up as long as the clamp locking mechanism is released.

NOTE

The hydraulic function for opening the clamp is available for one second after the clamp locking mechanism is released. After one second, the clamp locking mechanism is automatically reactivated.

- To open the clamp, push the cross lever (1) forwards again.

It is not necessary to release the clamp locking mechanism in order to close the clamp.

- To close the clamp, pull the cross lever (1) back.

- To operate clamping attachments, see the section entitled "Controlling attachments using the double mini-lever and the 5th function".

Triple mini-lever

- To release the clamp locking mechanism, push the operating lever (1) forwards.

The LED for button F2 (2) lights up as long as the clamp locking mechanism is released.

NOTE

The hydraulic function for opening the clamp is available for one second after the clamp locking mechanism is released. After one second, the clamp locking mechanism is automatically reactivated.

- To open the clamp, push the operating lever (1) forwards again.

It is not necessary to release the clamp locking mechanism in order to close the clamp.

- To close the clamp, pull the operating lever (1) back.
To operate clamping attachments, see the section entitled "Controlling attachments using the triple mini-lever and the 5th function".

**Quadruple mini-lever**

- To release the clamp locking mechanism, push the operating lever (1) forwards.

The LED for button F2 (2) lights up as long as the clamp locking mechanism is released.

![Diagram](image)

**NOTE**

*The hydraulic function for opening the clamp is available for one second after the clamp locking mechanism is released. After one second, the clamp locking mechanism is automatically reactivated.*

- To open the clamp, push the operating lever (1) forwards again.

It is not necessary to release the clamp locking mechanism in order to close the clamp.

- To close the clamp, pull the operating lever (1) back.

- To operate clamping attachments, see the section entitled "Controlling attachments using the quadruple mini-lever and the 5th function".
Operation

Working with attachments

**Joystick 4Plus**

- To release the clamp locking mechanism, press and hold shift key "F"(3) and move the horizontal rocker button (1) to the right.

- Keep shift key "F"(3) pressed and move the horizontal rocker button (1) back to the neutral position.

The LED (2) lights up as long as the clamp locking mechanism is released.

- To open the clamp, press and hold shift key "F"(3) and move the horizontal rocker button (1) to the right.

**NOTE**

*The hydraulic function for opening the clamp is available for one second after the clamp locking mechanism is released. After one second, the clamp locking mechanism is automatically reactivated.*

It is not necessary to release the clamp locking mechanism in order to close the clamp.

- To close the clamp, press and hold shift key "F"(3) and move the horizontal rocker button (1) to the left.

- To operate the clamping attachments, see the section entitled "Controlling attachments using the joystick 4Plus and the 5th function".
Fingertip

– To release the clamp locking mechanism, push the operating lever (1) forwards.

The LED for button F2 (2) lights up as long as the clamp locking mechanism is released.

**NOTE**

*The hydraulic function for opening the clamp is available for one second after the clamp locking mechanism is released. After one second, the clamp locking mechanism is automatically reactivated.*

– To open the clamp, push the operating lever (1) forwards again.

It is not necessary to release the clamp locking mechanism in order to close the clamp.

– To close the clamp, pull the operating lever (1) back.

– To operate the clamping attachments; see the section entitled "Controlling attachments using the fingertip and the 5th function".

Taking up a load using attachments

**WARNING**

Risk of accidents!

Attachments may only be used for their intended purpose as described in the relevant operating instructions.

Drivers must be instructed in the handling of the attachments.

**WARNING**

Risk of accidents!

Loads may only be picked up and transported with attachments if they are securely attached. Where necessary, loads should also be secured against slipping, rolling, falling over, swinging or tipping over. Note that any change to the position of the load’s centre of gravity will affect the stability of the forklift truck.

Check the capacity rating plates for the attachments or combination of attachments.
Operating auxiliary equipment

Switching the lighting on and off

Driving lights

– To switch on the parking light, press the button (1).

The front sidelights and the rear lights light up. On the variant with StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) equipment, the licence plate lamp also lights up.

– To switch on the headlights, press the button (1) again.

The headlights light up in addition to the parking light.

– To switch off the driving lights, press the button (1) again.

The driving lights go out.

NOTE

On the version with StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) equipment, the parking light and the licence plate lamp can be switched on without the key switch being switched on.
## Working spotlights

- To switch on the working spotlights (front and rear), press the button (1). The working spotlights light up.

- To switch off the working spotlights, press the button (1) again. The working spotlights go out.

**NOTE**

On the version with StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) equipment, the parking light and the licence plate lamp are switched on by switching on the working spotlights.

## Switching the rotating beacon on and off

- Push the button (1) for switching on the rotating beacon. The rotating beacon symbol (2) appears on the display. The rotating beacon is switched on.

**NOTE**

Pushing the button again switches the rotating beacon off again.
Switching the hazard warning system on and off

– Push the button (1) to switch on the hazard warning system.

All direction indicators and indicator lights (2) flash.

**NOTE**

Pushing the button again switches the hazard warning system off again.

**NOTE**

The hazard warning system can also be switched on without the key switch being switched on.

Switching the direction indicators on and off

**Mini-lever version**

– Switch on the direction indicators by moving the drive direction/turn indicator cross lever (1) to the left or right.
The direction indicators and the corresponding direction indicator lights (2) or (3) flash.

– Switch off the direction indicators by moving the cross lever to the centre position.

**Mini-console version**

– Switch on the direction indicators by moving the turn indicator switch (1) to the left or to the right.
The direction indicators and the corresponding direction indicator lights (2) or (3) flash.

- Switch off the direction indicators by moving the turn indicator switch to the centre position.

Switching the double working spotlights on and off.

The double working spotlights are fitted up on the front right and left on the overhead guard. Each double working spotlight consists of an upper working spotlight (2) and a lower working spotlight (3). The upper working spotlight illuminates the working area at great lift heights, the lower working spotlight illuminates the working area directly in front of the truck.

Depending on the equipment, the upper working spotlights can be switched on/off automatically or manually.

Switching the upper working spotlights on/off manually

**NOTE**

_The upper working spotlights can be switched on/off independently of the lower working spotlights. For information on switching the lower working spotlights on, see the "Switching lighting on and off" chapter._

**NOTE**

_This function is not available if the truck is equipped with rear window heating._
– Turn the key switch to position "I".
– Press button (1).

**NOTE**

*Pressing the button again switches the working spotlights off again.*

**Switching the upper working spotlights on/off automatically**

– Turn the key switch to position "I".
– For information on switching on working spotlights, see the "Switching lighting on and off" chapter.

The lower working spotlights light up.

The upper working spotlights are switched on automatically when the lift mast is lifted for a period of at least two seconds.

**NOTE**

*In these two seconds, a maximum of two lifts can take place so that the working spotlights do not switch on each time a precise adjustment is made. If more lifts are carried out during this time, the upper working spotlights will remain switched off.*

**NOTE**

*The upper working spotlights are switched off automatically when the truck is driven for longer than one second and faster than 2.1 km/h.*

**Lift-height-controlled switching on/off of the upper working spotlights**

**NOTE**

*This equipment is available only if a proximity switch is fitted to the lift mast to record a particular lift height of the fork carriage on the lift mast.*

– Turn the key switch to position "I".
– Switch on the working spotlights.
Operating auxiliary equipment

The lower working spotlights light up.

The upper working spotlights are switched on by the proximity switch when the fork carriage reaches or exceeds the preset lift height.

The upper working spotlights are switched off by the proximity switch when the fork carriage falls below the preset lift height again.

**CAUTION**

Possible component damage caused by collision if the proximity switch is set incorrectly.

– The proximity switch may be adjusted by trained personnel.
– Inform the relevant service centre.

---

**Operating the windscreen wiper/washer**

– Press the button (1) to activate the front wiper/washer (variant) and the roof panel wiper (variant).
– Push button (2) to actuate the rear windscreen wiper/washer (variant).

Repeated pressing of the respective button switches between the operating stages in the sequence shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button actuation</th>
<th>Operating stage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st time</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd time</td>
<td>Interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd time + hold</td>
<td>Washer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th time</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FleetManager (variant)**

FleetManager is an equipment variant and can be fitted to the truck in different versions. The description and operation information can be found in the separate operating instructions for the corresponding FleetManager versions.
Accident recorder (variant)

The accident recorder is an equipment variant to the FleetManager (variant), which is installed in the truck’s acceleration sensor. The acceleration sensor records data in the event of an accident. This data can be electronically read out and evaluated. For further information, contact your STILL service centre.

Driver restraint systems (variants)

Different driver restraint systems are available as variants for this truck. The description and operation for these systems can be found in the separate "Driver restraint systems" operating instructions.

Cab operation

Opening the cab door

⚠️ DANGER

There is a risk of damage caused by collision if the cab door opens while driving.
- The cab door must be latched securely in the engaged position.

Opening the cab door from the outside:
- Insert the key in the door lock (1), unlock and remove the key.
- Pull the door handle (2) and release the door lock.
- Open the cab door (3) by pulling outwards.

Opening the cab door from the inside:
- Take hold of the handlebar (4) and latch (5).
- Press the latch in and push the cab door outwards.
Closing the cab door

**DANGER**
There is a risk of damage caused by collision if the cab door opens while driving.
- The cab door must be latched securely in the engaged position.

Opening the side windows

**WARNING**
There is a risk of crushing between the window frame and side window from the side windows slipping inadvertently during travel.
- Make sure that the handle engages securely in the corresponding stop slot.

**Opening the rear side window:**
- Press the handle (2) together and slide the rear side window (1) forwards.
- Make sure that the handle engages in the stop slot (3).

**Opening the front side window:**
The front side window (4) can be opened in the same way as the rear side window.
Closing the side windows

**WARNING**
There is a risk of crushing between the window frame and side window from the side windows slipping inadvertently during travel.
- Make sure that the handle engages securely in the corresponding stop slot.

Closing the rear side window:
- Press the handle (2) together and pull the rear side window (1) to the rear.
- Make sure that the handle engages in the stop slot (3).

Closing the front side window:
The front side window (4) can be closed in the same way as the rear side window.
Operating the interior lighting

- Switch the interior lighting (7) on or off using the switch (8) or button (1).

The "interior lighting" symbol (2) appears in the display.
Operating the rear window heating

- Switch the rear window heating on or off with button (1).

The "rear window heating" symbol (2) appears in the display.

**NOTE**

*The rear window heating will switch off automatically after approx. 10 minutes or after pressing the switch again.*

Radio (variant)

The radio (1) and the loudspeakers (2) are an equipment variant. If the truck is equipped with a radio and loudspeakers, they are integrated into the roof lining.

The description and operation can be found in the separate operating instructions for the radio.

**WARNING**

The driver’s attention is adversely affected by operating the radio or listening to excessive volume while driving or handling loads. There is a risk of accident!

- Do not use the radio when driving or when handling loads.
- Set the radio volume so that you can still hear warning signals.
Heating system (variant)

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of explosion!
There is a risk of explosion if the heater is operated in the vicinity of storage areas or similar areas where fuel vapours or coal dust, wood dust and crop dust can accumulate.
- Do not expose spray cans or gas cartridges to the flow of hot air.
- Do not operate the heater in hazardous areas.

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of fire as a result of heat building up in the heating element!
Heat may build up if the air intake opening is blocked or the heating element collects dust. The heating element may overheat or short-circuit.
- Do not cover the air intake opening.
- Do not operate the heating system without a fresh air filter and recirculated air filter fitted.

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of burns!
When the heating system is operated, the heating system housing becomes hot and can burn the skin if it is touched.
- Do not touch the heating system housing during operation.

⚠️ CAUTION

Risk of blower malfunction!
The fresh air filter and recirculated air filter collect dust and dirt particles from the intake air. If the filter elements are not fitted, dust and dirt particles may block the blower.
- Do not operate the blower without a fresh air filter and recirculated air filter fitted.
Switching on the blower

– To switch on the blower, turn on the blower switch (1).

The blower runs at the speed level set at the switch.

Switching on the heating system

NOTE

The heating system only heats up when the blower is switched on. If the blower switch is switched off, the heating system will not function, regardless of the position of the heater switch.

– To switch the heating system on, first switch on the blower switch (1) and then the heating switch (2).

The heating system is in operation. The air is heated up to the heat output level set at the heating switch (2).

Adjusting the air flow

– Adjust the air flow at the front outlet vents (3) and at the outlet vent in the footwell (4).
Push-up roof window (variant)

**WARNING**

Risk of crushing!
- When closing the roof window, do not reach between the roof window and the overhead guard.
- Do not reach in to touch components as they are being closed.

The push-up roof window (1) is an equipment variant.
- To unlock and open the roof window, rotate the handle (2) in an anti-clockwise direction and use it to push the roof window upwards.

The roof window is held in the open position by means of gas springs (3).
- To close and lock the roof window, pull the roof window downwards using the handle and rotate the handle in a clockwise direction.

Clipboard (variant)

The clipboard (1) with reading lamp (2) is an equipment variant.
Trailer operation

Towed load

⚠️ DANGER

There is an increased risk of accident when using a trailer.

Using a trailer changes the truck handling characteristics. When towing, operate the truck such that the trailer train can be safely driven and braked at all times. The maximum permissible speed when towing is 5 km/h.

- Do not exceed the permissible speed of 5 km/h.
- Do not couple the truck in front of rail vehicles.
- The truck must not be used to push any kind of trolley.
- It must be possible to drive and brake at all times.

⚠️ CAUTION

Risk of damage to components!

The maximum towed load for occasional towing is the rated capacity specified on the nameplate. Overloading can lead to component damage on the truck. The sum of the actual towed load and the actual load on the fork must not exceed the rated capacity. If the towed load present corresponds to the rated capacity of the truck, it is not permitted to transport a load on the fork at the same time. The load can be distributed between the fork and the trailer.

- Check the load distribution and adjust to correspond to the rated capacity.
- Observe the permissible rigidity value of the tow coupling.

⚠️ CAUTION

Risk of damage to components!

The maximum towed load only applies when towing unbraked trailers on a level surface (maximum deviation +/- 1%) and on firm ground. The towed load must be reduced if towing on gradients. If necessary, notify the authorised service centre of the application conditions. The service centre provides the required data.

- Inform the authorised service centre.
CAUTION

Damage to the tow coupling due to overloading!
Tow couplings RO*243 and RO*244 must be individually checked to ensure that they are suitable for the planned towing operation. The permissible rigidity value of the tow coupling must always be taken into account. The authorised service centre can check and/or confirm the maximum towed load for the planned towing operation.

– Observe the operating instructions for the tow coupling.
– Inform the authorised service centre.

CAUTION

Risk of damage to components!
A support load is not permitted.

– Do not use trailers with tillers supported by the tow coupling.

This truck is suitable for the occasional towing of trailers. If the truck is equipped with a towing device, this occasional towing must not exceed 2% of the daily operating time. The manufacturer must be consulted if the truck is to be used for towing on a more regular basis.

Coupling pin in the counterweight

Coupling the trailer

DANGER

Danger to life! If you briefly leave the truck to couple or uncouple the trailer, there is a risk of being run over by the truck rolling away.

– Apply the parking brake.
– Lower the fork to the ground.
– Turn off the key switch and remove the key.
– Take measures to prevent the trailer from rolling away, e.g. use wheel chocks (1).

– Push the coupling pin (2) down, turn 90° and pull out.

– Adjust the tiller height.

**DANGER**

People can become trapped between the truck and trailer.

When coupling, ensure that there are no persons present between the truck and the trailer.

– Slowly move the truck backwards.

– By moving the truck back, introduce the tiller into the recess (3) in the counterweight.

**DANGER**

If the coupling pin or securing bush are lost or destroyed during towing, the trailer will work loose and become uncontrollable. This poses a risk of accident!

– Only use genuine coupling bolts that have been checked.

– Ensure that the coupling pin is correctly inserted and secured.

– Insert the coupling pin into the counterweight, press downwards against the spring pressure and turn 90° (the coupling pin is locked in this position).

– Remove any items used to prevent the trailer from rolling away.
Uncoupling the trailer

- Take measures to prevent the trailer from rolling away, e.g. use wheel chocks.
- Push the coupling pin (2) down, turn 90° and pull out.
- Slowly move the truck forwards and guide the tow-bar eye completely out of the counterweight.
- Insert the coupling pin into the counterweight, press downwards against the spring pressure and turn 90° (the coupling pin is locked in this position).

Automatic tow coupling

⚠️ DANGER
Persons may become trapped between the truck and trailer.
When hooking up, ensure that no one is between the truck and trailer.

⚠️ DANGER
Never jack up or crane load the truck on the tow coupling. The tow coupling is not designed for this and could be deformed or destroyed. The truck could fall off, with potentially fatal consequences!
- Use the tow coupling only for towing.
- For jacking up and crane loading, use only the designated lifting points.

⚠️ DANGER
The tow coupling is not designed for support loads and could be deformed or destroyed. This could cause the supported load to fall, with potentially fatal consequences!
- The tow coupling should be subjected only to horizontal loads, i.e. the tiller must be horizontal.
**DANGER**

If you briefly leave the truck to couple or uncouple, there is a risk to life caused by the truck rolling away and running you over.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Lower the fork to the ground.
- Turn off the key switch and remove the key.

**WARNING**

Never reach between the coupling pins and the towing jaws. If the component moves suddenly there is a risk of injury!
- To release the coupling pin, actuate the corresponding lever or use a suitable device (e.g. assembly lever).
- When not in use, close the automatic tow coupling.

**CAUTION**

Risk of damage due to component collision.
A truck with tow coupling needs more room for manoeuvring due to its overhang. The tow coupling can damage the racking or the tow coupling itself when manoeuvring. If there is a collision with the tow coupling, check the tow coupling for damage such as cracks. A damaged tow coupling must not be used again.
- Always manoeuvre carefully and with sufficient room.
- In the case of a collision, check the tow coupling for damage.
- Replace tow coupling if damaged, if necessary contact the authorised service centre.

**CAUTION**

Risk of damage to the tow bar eye or tiller!
Due to the truck’s rear wheel steering, the side slewing angle of the tiller may not be adequate. The coupling or the tiller may be damaged! The tow bar eye of the tiller must fit the tow coupling in terms of shape and size.
- Ensure that the tow bar eye and tiller fit correctly.
- Avoid sharp cornering.
- Exercise care when travelling and manoeuvring in reverse.
5 Trailer operation

**CAUTION**
Risk of component damage if the tiller in the tow coupling is tilted!
The tiller should if possible be kept horizontal when towing. This ensures a sufficient rotation range at the top and bottom. The authorised service centre can adjust the assembly height for the tow coupling to the tiller height if necessary.
- Make sure that the tiller is level.
- To change the coupling height, contact the authorised service centre.

**Coupling model RO*243**

**CAUTION**
Damage to the tow coupling due to overloading!
Tow couplings RO*243 and RO*244 must be individually checked to ensure that they are suitable for the planned towing operation. The permissible rigidity value of the tow coupling must always be taken into account. The authorised service centre can check and/or confirm the maximum towed load for the planned towing operation.
- Observe the operating instructions for the tow coupling.
- Inform the authorised service centre.

**NOTE**
Tow coupling RO*243 is intended for a tow-bar eye in accordance with DIN 74054 (bore diameter 40 mm).
- Take measures to prevent the trailer from rolling away, e.g. use wheel chocks (1).
- Adjust the tow bar eye of the tiller so that it is at the centre of the towing jaws.
– Pull out the safety handle (3).
– Push the hand lever (2) upwards.

**DANGER**
Persons may become trapped between the truck and trailer.
When hooking up, ensure that no one is between the truck and trailer.

**CAUTION**
When being coupled, the tow-bar eye must engage in the middle of the coupling jaw. Failure to follow these instructions could result in damage to the coupling jaw or to the tow-bar eye!
– Ensure that the tow-bar eye enters the coupling jaw centrally.

– Slowly move the truck back.

**DANGER**
If the coupling pin drops out during towing, the trailer will work loose and can no longer be controlled. There is a risk of accident!
A protruding safety handle means that the tow bar eye has not been coupled correctly. The trailer must not be towed in this condition.
– Ensure that the safety handle is flush with the securing bush.
– If the safety handle protrudes, repeat the coupling process.

– Remove any items used to prevent the trailer from rolling away.
– Tow the trailer.

**Closing model RO*243 by hand**

**DANGER**
Risk of injury from hand becoming trapped!
Do not reach into the coupling pin area with your hand. If, for example, a tow rope is to be secured in the tow coupling, use only a suitable device to close the tow coupling (e.g. assembly lever).

– Use a suitable device (e.g. assembly lever) to push the coupling pin up.

The coupling pin is released from the latch and then closes the tow coupling automatically.
Uncoupling model RO*243

- Take measures to prevent the trailer from rolling away, e.g. use wheel chocks.
- Pull out the safety handle (3).
- Push the hand lever (2) upwards.
- Slowly drive the truck forwards until the tow-bar eye and towing jaws are disconnected.
- Close the tow coupling by hand.

**CAUTION**

Damage to the tow coupling due to overloading!

Tow couplings RO*243 and RO*244 must be individually checked to ensure that they are suitable for the planned towing operation. The permissible rigidity value of the tow coupling must always be taken into account. The authorised service centre can check and/or confirm the maximum towed load for the planned towing operation.

- Observe the operating instructions for the tow coupling.
- Inform the authorised service centre.

**NOTE**

*Tow coupling RO*244 A is intended for a tow-bar eye in accordance with DIN 74054 (bore diameter 40 mm) or DIN 8454 (bore diameter 35 mm).

- Take measures to prevent the trailer from rolling away, e.g. use wheel chocks.
- Adjust the tow bar eye of the tiller so that it is at the centre of the towing jaws.
- Push the hand lever (2) upwards until it snaps into place.

The tow coupling is opened.
**DANGER**

Persons may become trapped between the truck and trailer!

When hooking up, ensure that no one is between the truck and trailer.

---

**CAUTION**

When being coupled, the tow-bar eye must engage in the middle of the coupling jaw. Failure to follow these instructions could result in damage to the coupling jaw or to the tow-bar eye!

– Ensure that the tow-bar eye enters the coupling jaw centrally.

– Move the truck back slowly until the tow bar eye is inserted centrally into the coupling jaw of the tow coupling and the coupling pin engages.

---

**NOTE**

*The coupling pin is correctly engaged if the control pin (3) does not protrude out of its guide.*

---

**DANGER**

If the coupling pin drops out during towing, the trailer will work loose and can no longer be controlled. There is a risk of accident!

The control pin (3) must not protrude out of its guide.

– Ensure that the coupling pin is engaged correctly.

If the coupling pin is not correctly engaged:

– Remove any items used to prevent the trailer from rolling away.

– Move the truck with the trailer forwards approx. 1 m and then move it back slightly.

– On the coupling pin, check again that the control pin does not protrude out of its guide.

– Remove any items used to prevent the trailer from rolling away.

– Tow the trailer.
Closing model RO*244 A by hand

**DANGER**

Risk of injury from hand becoming trapped!
Do not reach into the coupling pin area with your hand. If, for example, a tow rope is to be secured in the tow coupling, only actuate the tow coupling via the closing lever (1).

- Press the closing lever (1) downwards as far as it will go.

The tow coupling is closed.

Uncoupling model RO*244 A

- Take measures to prevent the trailer from rolling away, e.g. use wheel chocks.
- Push the hand lever (2) upwards until it snaps into place.

The tow coupling is opened.

- Slowly drive the truck forwards until the towbar eye and towing jaws are disconnected.
- Close the tow coupling by actuating the closing lever (1).

**NOTE**

*To protect the lower coupling pin bush against contamination, always keep the tow coupling closed.*
Operation

Coupling model RO*245

**NOTE**

*Tow coupling RO 245 is intended for a tow-bar eye in accordance with DIN 74054 (bore diameter 40 mm) or DIN 8454 (bore diameter 35 mm).*

- Take measures to prevent the trailer from rolling away, e.g. use wheel chocks.
- Adjust the tow bar eye of the tiller so that it is at the centre of the towing jaws.
- Push the hand lever (5) upwards.

The tow coupling is opened.

**DANGER**

*Persons may become trapped between the truck and trailer!*

When hooking up, ensure that no one is between the truck and trailer.

- Slowly move the truck back.

**DANGER**

*If the coupling pin drops out during towing, the trailer will work loose and can no longer be controlled. There is a risk of accident!*

A protruding safety handle means that the tow bar eye has not been coupled correctly. The trailer must not be towed in this condition.

- Make sure that the control pin does *not* protrude from the control bush.
- Repeat the coupling process if necessary.

- Remove any items used to prevent the trailer from rolling away.
- Tow the trailer.
Uncoupling model RO*245

- Take measures to prevent the trailer from rolling away, e.g. use wheel chocks.
- Push the hand lever (5) upwards.
- Slowly drive the truck forwards until the towbar eye and towing jaws are disconnected.
- Push the closing lever (7) on the left side of the tow coupling down as far as it will go.

The tow coupling is closed.

Towing trailers

- Drivers who are towing a trailer for the first time must practise driving with a trailer in a suitable area.
- When passing through narrow road areas (entrances, gates etc.), observe the dimensions of the trailer and load.
- When towing multiple trailers, ensure a sufficient minimum distance to fixed installations when turning and cornering.

The permissible length of the trailer trains depends on the roadways to be driven and may need to be determined during the test drive.

It is the responsibility of the operating company to instruct the drivers regarding the permissible number of trailers and, where required, any additional speed reductions on individual sections of the route.

**NOTE**

*Please observe the definition of the following responsible persons: "operating company" and "driver".*
Operating the display and operating unit

Indicators

Standard displays

In the factory setting, the following indicators can be seen in the display and operating unit:

1 **Battery charge**

   Displays the available battery capacity as a segmented bar graph in 10% increments.

   Approx. every 10 seconds, the display switches from showing the battery charge to the remaining operating time.

   If a different drive program or a different drive mode (e.g. Blue-Q) is selected, the system immediately recalculates the remaining operating time and indicates for how long the truck can be driven if the operating situation of the last 30 minutes is maintained.

2 **Drive program**

   Displays the number of the selected drive program. To change the drive program, refer to the section entitled "Setting the drive program".

   The Blue-Q icon appears when the Blue-Q function is switched on; refer to the section entitled "Blue-Q efficiency mode".

3 **Power rating**

   The power rating indicator shows the average energy consumption over the last 30 minutes in kilowatts (kW).

   Trends relating to the current energy consumption are displayed as a vertical bar graph. The percentage change in each bar is shown in the table under "Power trends indicator" below.

4 **Time**

   Displays the current time digitally in hours and minutes. The time can be adjusted; see the chapter entitled "Setting the time".
**CAUTION**

Deep discharges shorten the service life of the battery.

If no bar is shown (0% of the available battery capacity, i.e. around 20% of the nominal capacity), deep discharge begins.

– Deep discharge (no bar on the display) must be avoided.
– Cease work with the truck immediately.
– Charge the batteries immediately.

**NOTE**

*To prevent deep discharge, certain restrictions (variant) can be activated (e.g. slow lifting). Consult the authorised service centre on this matter.*

**Power trends indicator**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Energy consumption trend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Significant increase (&gt; 50%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increase (up to 50%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slight increase (up to 30%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slight decrease (up to -30%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decrease (up to -50%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Significant decrease (&gt; -50%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional indicators

5 **Menu change button**
When the menu change button is pressed, the following additional indicators appear:

6 **“Service in” display**
Displays the remaining time in operating hours until the next maintenance operation is due according to the maintenance schedule in the maintenance instructions. Contact the authorised service centre in good time.

7 **Operating hours**
Displays the total operating hours completed by the truck. The hour meter starts running as soon as the truck is driven or the working hydraulics are actuated.

8 **Total distance**
Displays the total distance driven in kilometres.

9 **Daily kilometres**
Displays the kilometres driven for the day.

**NOTE**
*Ask the authorised service centre about the speed driven indicator.*

**NOTE**
*Have all repair and maintenance work performed by an authorised service centre. This is the only way to permanently correct defects.*

- Inform the authorised service centre when the maintenance interval is reached.
Operating the display and operating unit

Adjusting the displays

**NOTE**

The parking brake must always be engaged when you adjust the displays. The displays cannot be adjusted if the parking brake is not engaged.

**NOTE**

When adjusting the displays, do not actuate the hydraulic system operating devices. If you do, entry is interrupted and the display returns to the operating display.

The displays are adjusted in the configuration menu.

- Turn the key switch to position "I".
- Press the drive program button (1) and the menu change button (2) at the same time.

The display changes to the password menu.

- Press the return key (3).

The display changes to the configuration menu.

The following settings are possible and can be found in the corresponding chapter:

- Setting the date and time
- Resetting the daily kilometres and daily operating hours
- Setting the language
- Configuring Blue Q

Symbols in the display

Messages

To show operating messages, warning messages or error messages in the display, text messages and symbols are used.
### Symbols for operating messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Empty field</td>
<td>No display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please wait</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service required</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift limitation</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference cycle</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery charging</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive program</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hour meter</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odometer</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily hour meter</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily odometer</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering angle</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic system</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exh. gas purifier</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolant temperature</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel level</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue-Q</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power rating (average)</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power rating (trend)</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Symbols for warning messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parking brake</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actuate seat switch</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety belt</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery acid level</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neutral warning message</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Symbols for error messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brake system malfunction</td>
<td>🟡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overheating of the engine</td>
<td>🔥</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overheating</td>
<td>🔥</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malfunction in the electrical system</td>
<td>🟡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General malfunction</td>
<td>🟡</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Symbols for auxiliary equipment soft key functions

For the auxiliary equipment, the following symbols for the soft key functions are used on the left in the display:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Empty field</td>
<td>No display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General function key OFF</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General function key ON</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear working spotlight OFF</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear working spotlight ON</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front working spotlight OFF</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front working spotlight ON</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windscreen heating OFF</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windscreen heating ON</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear window heating OFF</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear window heating ON</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior lighting OFF</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior lighting ON</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof wiper/washer OFF</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof wiper/washer ON</td>
<td>🔴</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Symbols for the soft key functions for menu navigation and for acknowledging messages

For menu navigation and to acknowledge messages, the following symbols for the soft key functions are used on the left of the display:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Empty field</td>
<td>No display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESC button to return to the main menu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER button to confirm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK button to confirm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RES button to reset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Button to return to the main menu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Button to return to the previous edit field</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scroll button to scroll up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scroll button to scroll down</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scroll button to count up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scroll button to count down</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Status LEDs of the function keys for additional electrical installations

The current switch status of a button is indicated with LEDs next to the relevant function key for the additional electrical installation.
### Symbols for numeric keypad

The available inputs and the positions of the keys are shown for inputting digits, **ESC** and **ENTER**.

- **Function off** → **LED OFF**
- **Function on** → **LED ON**

**Keys for the digits 1 to 7** and the **ESC** and **ENTER** keys for inputting the fleet manager password

**Keys for digits 0 to 9** for inputting the driver PIN (access code)
Setting the date or time

- Switch to the "CONFIGURATION" menu; see ⇒ Chapter "Adjusting the displays", P. 5-220.

- Press the drive program key (1) or menu selection key (2) until the option TIME appears. Confirm your selection by pressing the Return key (4).

The "TIME" menu appears.

- Press the drive program button (1) or the menu change button (2) until the desired time appears in the display.

As the buttons are held down for longer, the scrolling speed increases in three levels.

- Confirm the time set by pressing the Return key (4).

- Use the arrow key (3) to exit the menu and return to the next higher level.

**NOTE**

The date is set in a similar manner.

Resetting the daily kilometres and daily operating hours

The daily number of kilometres and daily operating hours displays can be reset to zero:

- Switch to the "CONFIGURATION" menu; see ⇒ Chapter "Adjusting the displays", P. 5-220.

- Press drive program button (1) or menu selection button (2) until the DAY-KM option appears. Confirm your selection by pressing the Return key.

The "DAY KM" menu appears.

- Reset the values by pressing the **RES** (4) button.

- Use the arrow key (3) to exit the menu and return to the next higher level.
NOTE

The daily operating hours are reset in the same manner.

Setting the language

The displays can be shown in additional languages:

- Switch to the "CONFIGURATION" menu; see ⇒ Chapter "Adjusting the displays", P. 5-220.
- Press drive program button (1) or menu selection button (2) until the LANGUAGE option appears. Confirm your selection by pressing Return key (4).

The "LANGUAGE" menu appears.

- Press drive program button (1) or menu change button (2) until the desired language appears in the display.
- Confirm your selection by pressing the Return key (4).
- Use arrow key (3) to exit the menu and return to the next higher level.

Soft key button for operating various equipment variants

There are two soft key columns available on the display operating unit. With these soft key columns, you can switch the additional functions on and off, e.g. a rotating beacon. The second soft key column is only available if the truck has more than three additional functions.
A grey bar (3) highlights the active soft key column, i.e. the soft keys in this column can be operated. To change the soft key column:

- Briefly press the "Menu change button"(1). The grey bar jumps to the other soft key column. The required soft keys are now active and the functions assigned to them can be switched on and off using the corresponding soft key buttons (2).

**NOTE**

In order to shift between the individual menus of the display operating unit, press the "Menu change button" (1) for approx. 1 second.

**NOTE**

The functions of the two soft key columns depend on the individual equipment of the truck. Therefore, the soft keys on your display operating unit may vary to those shown here.
Blue-Q efficiency mode

Functional description

The Blue-Q efficiency mode affects both the drive unit and the activation of the additional consumers, and reduces the truck’s energy consumption.

If the efficiency mode has been activated, the acceleration behaviour of the truck changes to make acceleration more moderate.

When travelling at low speeds—normally when manoeuvring—no reduction is noticeable despite the activated efficiency mode. For moderate speeds of at least approx. 7 km/h, acceleration is gentler. Therefore, on distances of up to approx. 40 m, lower speeds are reached than would be the case if the efficiency mode was not activated.

Blue-Q has no influence on:
- Maximum speed
- Climbing capability
- Traction
- Braking characteristics

NOTE

The Blue-Q efficiency mode can be switched on and off in the STANDARD and FIXED-FLEX operating modes. If the FIXED operating mode is configured in the display operating unit, the Blue-Q button has no function and the Blue-Q efficiency mode is switched on permanently; see also chapter “Configuring Blue-Q efficiency mode”.

Effects on additional consumers

The following table shows the specific conditions that cause certain auxiliary devices to shutdown when Blue Q is activated. The auxiliary devices available depend on the truck equipment.
### Switching efficiency mode Blue-Q on and off

**NOTE**

The Blue-Q efficiency mode can be switched on and off in the STANDARD and FIXED-FLEX operating modes. If the FIXED operating mode is configured in the display operating unit, the Blue-Q button has no function and the Blue-Q efficiency mode is switched on permanently. For information on configuring the Blue-Q operating modes, see chapter "Configuring Blue Q efficiency mode".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shut-off</th>
<th>Seat switch</th>
<th>Truck stopped</th>
<th>Drive direction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front working spotlight*</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Backwards &gt; 3 km/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear working spotlight*</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Forwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top double working spotlight*</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>&gt; 3 km/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlight*</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side light</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front wiper</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Backwards &gt; 3 km/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear wiper</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Forwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat heater</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cab heating</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*No shutdown for StVZO (Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) equipment.*
5 Operation

Blue-Q efficiency mode

- Press the Blue-Q button (1).

The Blue-Q symbol (2) appears next to the drive programme symbol in the display and operating unit, which means that the Blue-Q efficiency mode is activated.

Pressing the Blue-Q button once again turns the Blue-Q efficiency mode off again.

Configuring Blue-Q efficiency mode

The following operating modes can be selected to activate the Blue-Q efficiency mode:

STANDARD
- Blue-Q is turned off whenever the truck is commissioned. The driver can use the Blue-Q button to switch efficiency mode on and off at any time while the truck is being operated.

FIXED
- Blue-Q is switched on permanently whenever the truck is commissioned and during truck operation. The driver cannot turn efficiency mode off.

FIXED-FLEX
- Blue-Q is turned on whenever the truck is commissioned. The driver can use the Blue-Q button to switch efficiency mode on and off at any time while the truck is being operated.
- Switch to the CONFIGURATION menu; see ⇒ Chapter "Adjusting the displays", P. 5-220
- Keep pressing the drive programme button (1) or the menu change button (2) until option BLUE Q CONFIGURATION appears.
- Confirm your selection by pressing the Return key (4).
The BLUE-Q CONFIGURATION menu appears.
- Press drive program button (1) or menu change button (2) until the desired efficiency mode appears in the display.
- Confirm the set efficiency mode with Return button (4).
- Use arrow key (3) to exit the menu and return to the next higher level.
Display messages

Display content

On the display of the display-operating unit, event-related messages may appear due to certain truck conditions.

The following types of message may appear individually or in combination:
- A graphic symbol (2)
- The message (3)
- An error code (4) consisting of a letter and a four-digit number

NOTE

Each time a message appears, the "Malfunction" display (1) also lights up.

Messages are always shown repeatedly and for a certain period of time, according to the event.

In the case of successive events, the respective messages are displayed one after another on the display.

After a few seconds, the display will alternate between the last shown operating display and the message.

The frequency of alternation depends on the type of event.
- If a message appears, follow these operating instructions.

Once the event is remedied, the message will disappear.

If a malfunction continues to occur, the message will continue to appear.
- Park the truck safely.
- Inform the authorised service centre.

Error code table

The table gives an overview of possible displays. In the "Comment" column you will find information on how to proceed should any of these messages appear.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message text (English) / Error code</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **OVERHEATING** A5022             | Traction motor(s) is/are too hot.  
1st phase: regulation of acceleration and speed.  
2nd phase: limitation of phase current in converter (emergency driving function is retained).  
The error automatically disappears as soon as the temperature is below the limit.  
If the error occurs more frequently, notify your authorised service centre. |
| **OVERHEATING** A5364             | Pump converter is too hot.  
Notify your authorised service centre. |
| **ACCELERATOR** A3002 A3003 A3004 A3005 A3006 A3007 A3505 | Sensor fault, truck cannot be driven.  
Notify your authorised service centre. |
| **ACCELERATOR** A3008             | Accelerator voltages (for dual pedal) do not match; truck cannot be driven.  
Notify your authorised service centre. |
| **ACCELERATOR** A3811             | Accelerator configuration is invalid. Truck cannot be driven.  
Notify your authorised service centre. |
| **BRAKE SENSOR** A3016 A3017      | Sensor fault; truck can only be driven at emergency mode speed.  
Notify your authorised service centre. |
| **CONFIGURATION** A2111 A3801 A3812 | Parameterisation error; drive unit and hydraulic drive not functioning.  
Notify your authorised service centre. |
| **SEAT SWITCH** A302              | Seat switch has not been actuated for approx. 8 hours.  
Truck may still drive at a reduced speed and with reduced lifting capacity.  
Stand up briefly and then sit down again.  
If this does not resolve the problem, contact your authorised service centre. |
| **STEERING** A3215 A3216 A3570    | Sensor fault; truck moves at emergency mode speed.  
Notify your authorised service centre. |
| **DRIVE DIRECTION** A3020         | Switch error; no or limited drive unit function.  
Notify your authorised service centre. |
| **LIFTING** A3102 A3103           | Sensor fault; no or limited hydraulic drive function.  
Notify your authorised service centre. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message text (English) / Error code</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TILTING A3107 A3108</td>
<td>Sensor fault; no or limited hydraulic drive function. Notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAST VERTICAL A3130 A3131 A3132</td>
<td>No hydraulic function. Turn off &quot;lift mast vertical position&quot;. Notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAST VERTICAL A3135</td>
<td>No hydraulic function. Turn off &quot;lift mast vertical position&quot;. Notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXT1 A3112 A3113</td>
<td>Sensor fault; no or limited hydraulic drive function. Notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXT2 A3117 A3118</td>
<td>Sensor fault; no or limited hydraulic drive function. Notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POWER SUPPLY A2242</td>
<td>Transmitter power supply short circuit. Truck cannot be driven. Notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SURVEILLANCE A2801 A2802 A2808 A2809 A2810 A2815</td>
<td>Drive unit not functioning. Release accelerator pedal. If this error occurs sporadically, it can be tolerated. If the operational capacity is impaired, notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SURVEILLANCE A2803 A2806</td>
<td>Drive direction is set to neutral. Reselect the drive direction. If this error occurs sporadically, it can be tolerated. If the operational capacity is impaired, notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SURVEILLANCE A2817</td>
<td>Truck is not ready for operation. Turn the key switch to the zero position and restart. If this error occurs sporadically, it can be tolerated. If the operational capacity is impaired, notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SURVEILLANCE A2804 A2805 A2807 A2811 A2812 A2813 A2814 A2816 A2818</td>
<td>No or limited drive unit function. Notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message text (English) / Error code</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SURVEILLANCE A2295</td>
<td>No or limited function of drive unit and hydraulic drive. Notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRIVE A5031 A5041 A5046 A5301 A5331 A5361</td>
<td>Temperature sensor fault Notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATTERY CHANGER A5910</td>
<td>The support roller for the hydraulic battery carrier is not fully extended Notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATTERY CHANGER A5920</td>
<td>Hydraulic pump of the hydraulic battery carrier is overheating. Allow the truck to cool down for 1 hour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATTERY CHANGER A5930</td>
<td>Button error Notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATTERY CHANGER A5931</td>
<td>Plausibility error with potentiometer for hydraulic battery carrier Notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTROL UNIT A3305</td>
<td>CIO not functioning. Notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARKING BRAKE OIL PRESSURE A3043</td>
<td>Parking brake oil pressure too low; the drive unit is locked. If this message remains permanently displayed, notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARKING BRAKE OIL PRESSURE A3049</td>
<td>Parking brake oil pressure low; truck only moves at emergency mode speed. If this message remains permanently displayed, notify your authorised service centre.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### General messages

**NOTE**

Some of the following messages are equipment-specific and may not appear on the display and operating unit of every truck. The following messages are therefore intended only as a reference.
Display messages

SERVICE BRAKE message

If the message SERVICE BRAKE appears on the display, notify the authorised service centre.

– Park the truck securely for checking by the authorised service centre.

– If multi-disc brakes in the drive wheel units are blocked, tow the truck.

APPLY HANDBRAKE message

DANGER

Risk of fatal injury from being run over if the truck rolls away!

Parking the truck without the parking brake applied is dangerous and is not permitted.

– The truck must not be parked on a slope.

– Only leave the truck when the parking brake has been applied.

– In emergencies, secure the truck using wedges on the side facing downhill.

NOTE

The truck is equipped with a negative spring-operated brake. Switching off the truck will block the multi-disc brakes in the drive wheel units after a few minutes. However, the truck can still roll until the drive wheel units are blocked. For this reason, the parking brake must always be applied before you leave the truck!

If you park the truck without applying the parking brake and then vacate the driver’s seat, the APPLY HANDBRAKE message will appear in the display (variant). An optional signal tone sounds.

– Apply the parking brake.

The APPLY HANDBRAKE message disappears.

If the truck moves even though the parking brake is applied:

– Drive the truck onto level ground and park it safely. Secure it with wedges if necessary.

– Notify the authorised service centre.
**BRAKE SENSOR message**

If the **BRAKE SENSOR** message appears in the display, the maximum driving speed will be reduced. The brake sensor in the brake pedal must be checked.

– Notify the authorised service centre.

**CODE DENIED message**

If the message **CODE DENIED** appears on the display, the driver PIN has been entered incorrectly three times. The input is then locked for five minutes before another attempt can be made.

– Enter the driver PIN again after five minutes.

**ACCELERATOR message**

If the **ACCELERATOR** message appears on the display, the truck will remain stationary. The accelerator must be checked.

– Notify the authorised service centre.

**SWITCH OFF TRUCK? message**

If the message **SWITCH OFF THE TRUCK?** appears on the display, the switching-off of the truck is verified.

– Press the corresponding softkey on the display and operating unit to switch off the truck or cancel the operation.

**PARKING BRAKE ACTIVE message**

If the electric parking brake is applied, the **PARKING BRAKE ACTIVE** message appears on the display for 5 seconds.

– Release the parking brake to enable driving mode.

**RELEASE PARKING BRAKE message**

If the message **RELEASE PARKING BRAKE** appears on the display, driving mode cannot be enabled until the parking brake has been released by pressing the button.
Display messages

– Release the parking brake by pressing the button.

**PARKING BRAKE: APPLY HAND-BRAKE! message**

If the message **PARKING BRAKE: APPLY HANDBRAKE!** appears on the display, the electric parking brake is faulty.

– Release the parking brake by pressing the button.

**LOWER FORKS message**

⚠️ **DANGER**

*There is a risk of fatal injury from a falling load or parts of the truck being lowered!*

Parking the truck with the load lifted is dangerous and is not permitted under any circumstances! The increased safety provided by this function must not be misused in order to take safety risks.

– Lower the load fully before leaving the truck.

The fork is not lowered.

If the fork is above the height sensor, the key switch is turned off and the seat vacated, the **LOWER FORKS** message appears in the display (variant). An optional signal tone sounds.

– Lower the fork to the ground.

The message **LOWER FORKS** disappears.

**STEERING message**

If the **STEERING** message appears in the display, the truck will only move at emergency mode speed. The steering angle sensor must be checked.

– Notify the authorised service centre.

**TILTING SPEED message**

If the message **TILTING SPEED** appears on the display after the welcome screen, the tilting speed of the lift mast on this truck is significantly higher than on previous trucks in this family.
**EMERGENCY SWITCH message**

**WARNING**

No electric braking assistance is available when the emergency off switch is actuated!

Actuating the emergency off switch will disconnect the drives from the power supply.

- To brake, actuate the service brake.

The truck is equipped with an emergency off switch. When this switch is actuated, the driving functions and the functions of the working hydraulics are blocked.

The EMERGENCY SWITCH message appears periodically when the following criteria are met:

- The key switch is set to stage "I"
- The emergency off switch is actuated
- An operating device is actuated

**? VERTICAL POSITION**

If the message ? VERTICAL POSITION appears on the display, calibration of the "vertical lift mast position" has been activated.

- Save the mast position or cancel the calibration.

**REFERENCE CYCLE message**

If the fork was lowered after the truck was switched off, the control electronics do not know the position of the fork when the truck is restarted. The truck will only travel at a reduced driving speed. Depending on the position of the fork, the message REFERENCE CYCLE (variant) may appear in the display. To align the position with the control electronics, the fork must be raised.

- Switch on the key switch.

The truck will only travel at a reduced driving speed. The message REFERENCE CYCLE may appear in the display.

- Raise the fork.

The message REFERENCE CYCLE goes out, or now appears in the display for the first time and then goes out.
Display messages

– To drive again, lower the fork to a maximum of 300 mm above the ground.

The truck can now be driven again with no speed limitation.

SAFETY BELT message

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of fatal injury in the event of falling from the truck if it tips over!

If the truck tips over, the driver is at risk of injury even if a restraint system is used. The risk of injury can be reduced by using a combination of a restraint system and a seat belt. In addition, the seat belt protects against the consequences of rear-end collisions and falling off ramps.

– We recommend that you always use the seat belt.

This device (variant) ensures that if the seat belt is not being used or is being used incorrectly, the truck will only drive slowly or (optionally) will not drive at all.

Depending on the configuration selected, the working hydraulics functions (lifting/tilting) are either available as normal, slowed down or not available at all.

The SAFETY BELT message with the restricted driving and lifting functions is triggered by the following circumstances:

• Seat belt not worn and driver’s seat occupied
• The seat belt is constantly fastened but the driver’s seat is only occupied afterwards
• The seat belt is not fastened until after the key switch has been switched on
• The seat belt is unfastened while driving

– If the SAFETY BELT message appears, fasten the seat belt in accordance with the regulations.

The truck can again be operated without restrictions.
If the seat belt is released while driving, the truck will be limited to low driving speeds or will be braked to a halt.

**DANGER**

Risk of accident!
– The speed must be adjusted to suit the driving situation!

The increased safety provided by this function must not be misused in order to take safety risks.

**ARE YOU SURE? message**

If the message *ARE YOU SURE?* appears on the display, a prior prompt is verified.
– Press the corresponding softkey on the display and operating unit to continue or to cancel the operation.

**SEAT SWITCH message**

The truck is equipped with a seat switch.

If the *SEAT SWITCH* message appears, the driving functions and the working hydraulics are blocked.

The *SEAT SWITCH* message is triggered by the following situations:
• The seat switch is not actuated while the accelerator pedal or steering wheel is actuated
• The seat switch is not actuated while the operating device for the working hydraulics is actuated
• The shift time has been exceeded
• The operating time has been exceeded

**NOTE**

*The operating devices shown in the following illustrations are only examples and may differ from the equipment in your truck.*
The seat switch is not actuated while the accelerator pedal or steering wheel is actuated

The accelerator pedal or the steering wheel is actuated, even though no one is sitting in the driver’s seat. The message SEAT SWITCH appears on the display. The truck will not move.

– Sit in the driver’s seat and fasten the seat belt.

The truck can be driven again without restrictions.

The seat switch is not actuated while the operating device for the working hydraulics is actuated

An operating device for the working hydraulics is actuated, even though no one is sitting in the driver’s seat. The message SEAT SWITCH appears on the display. The working hydraulics functions cannot be executed.

– Sit in the driver’s seat and fasten the seat belt.

The working hydraulics can be operated again.
**The shift time has been exceeded**

**NOTE**

*The shift time is adjustable.*

If the key switch is switched on and the driver does not leave the seat before the set shift time is exceeded, **SEAT SWITCH** appears on the display. This is also the case if an operating device for the working hydraulics or the accelerator pedal is actuated. Depending on the configuration, the working hydraulic functions can be executed normally, only slowly or not at all.

- Stand up briefly from the seat, sit back down again and fasten the seat belt.

The truck can again be operated without restrictions.

**The operating time has been exceeded**

**NOTE**

*The operating time is adjustable.*

If the key switch is switched on, the parking brake is released and the driver does not leave the seat before the set operating time is exceeded, and if neither the operating devices for the working hydraulics nor the accelerator pedal are actuated during this time, **SEAT SWITCH** appears on the display. The truck will not move. Depending on the configuration, the working hydraulic functions can be executed normally, only slowly or not at all.

- Stand up briefly from the seat, sit back down again and fasten the seat belt.

The truck can again be operated without restrictions.

**OVERHEATING message**

If the message **OVERHEATING** appears on the display, the traction motors have overheated. The acceleration and the speed of the truck are reduced.

- Allow the truck to cool down.
- If the error persists, contact your authorised service centre.
5 Display messages

SURVEILLANCE message

If the SURVEILLANCE message appears in the display, there is a fault in the process monitoring.

This shuts off the drive unit.

– Switch the key switch to the "0" position and then back to the "I" position.
– Start the engine.
– Release accelerator pedal.
– Select the drive direction again.

**NOTE**

*If this error occurs sporadically, it can be tolerated. If the operational capacity is impaired, notify your authorised service centre.*

NOT VALID message

If the message NOT VALID appears on the display, an incorrect driver PIN has been entered when entering the access code.

– Once the message goes out, enter the driver PIN again.

Drive-specific messages

Message ! PARKING BRAKE OIL PRESSURE

If the following message appears in the display when the accelerator pedal is actuated: ! PARKING BRAKE OIL PRESSURE, the service brake of the truck is not ready for use.

The driving speed is limited to 5 km/h.

When the service brake is ready for operation, the message disappears. The speed limitation is cancelled.

MOT/GEN.-TEMP. message

If the MOT/GEN.-TEMP. message appears, the traction motor or the generator is overheated or a cable is broken.
– Interrupt work and allow the truck to cool down. Do not switch off the key switch.

**NOTE**

*If the operational capacity is impaired, notify your authorised service centre.*

**OVERHEATING message**

If the message **OVERHEATING** appears in the display, the traction motors have overheated. The acceleration and the speed of the truck are reduced.

– Allow the truck to cool down.
– If the error persists, contact your authorised service centre.

**CLOSE THE DOOR message**

If the message **CLOSE THE DOOR (variant)** appears in the display, the battery door is not shut correctly. The truck will not move.

– Close the battery door.

**LIFT HEIGHT message**

**Speed limitation with a raised load (variant)**

This function makes sure that the truck can only move slowly when a load is lifted.

**DANGER**

*Risk of accident!*
Before using this function, familiarise yourself with the altered driving characteristics of the truck!
Optionally, the truck can have altered acceleration behaviour and/or braking characteristics.

**DANGER**

*Risk of accident!*
Driving with a lifted load is prohibited, because the truck can overturn due to the high centre of gravity. Because the limits determined by physics cannot be altered, the increased safety provided by this function must not be misused in order to take safety risks.
Display messages

If the fork is raised above a certain height, the following happens:

Lifting the load at a standstill

The key switch is switched on. The driver sits on the seat with the belt fastened. The load is lifted. The display briefly shows the flashing message \textit{LIFT HEIGHT}. The truck will only travel at a reduced driving speed.

- Lower the fork (load) to just above the ground.

The truck can now be driven again with no speed limitation.

Lifting the load while driving

If you are travelling with the load during a stacking/unstacking operation and lift the load while travelling, the flashing message \textit{LIFT HEIGHT} appears briefly in the display. The truck will travel slowly or will be braked.

- Lower the fork (load) to just above the ground.

The truck can now be driven again with no speed limitation.
Operating in special operating situations

Transportation

⚠️ CAUTION

Risk of material damage from overloading!
If the truck is driven onto a means of transport, the load capacity of the means of transport, the ramps and loading bridges must be greater than the total actual weight of the truck. Components may become permanently deformed or damaged due to overloading.
- Determine the total actual weight of the truck.
- Only load the truck if the load capacity of the means of transport, the ramps and loading bridges is greater than the total actual weight of the truck.

Determining the total actual weight

- Park the truck securely.
- Determine the unit weights by reading the truck nameplate and, if necessary, the attachment (variant) nameplate.
- Add the determined unit weights to obtain the total actual weight of the truck:
  - Tare weight (1)
  - + Max. permissible battery weight (2)
  - + Ballast weight (variant) (3)
  - + Attachment net weight (variant)
  - + 100 kg allowance for driver
  = Total actual weight
## Operating in special operating situations

### DANGER

**Risk of accident from the truck crashing!**

Steering movements can cause the tail end to veer off the loading bridge towards the edge. This may cause the truck to crash.

- Before driving across a loading bridge, ensure that it is properly attached and secured.
- Ensure that the transport vehicle onto which the truck is to be driven has been sufficiently secured against moving.
- Maintain a safe distance from edges, loading bridges, ramps, working platforms etc.
- Drive slowly and carefully onto the transport vehicle.

### Inserting wedges

- Secure the truck from rolling away by placing a wheel chock (1) in front of each front wheel and behind each back wheel.
- Park the truck securely.

### CAUTION

**Risk of component damage!**

If you remove the battery male connector while the key switch is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to corrosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens their service life.

- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the key switch is switched on.
- Ensure that the key switch is switched off.
- Disconnect the battery male connector.

### Lashing down

### CAUTION

Abrasive lashing straps can rub against the surface of the truck and cause damage.

- Position slip-resistant pads beneath the lifting points (e.g. rubber mats or foam).
– Attach lashing straps (1) to both sides of the truck and lash the truck to the rear.

– Attach lashing straps (1) to the coupling pin (2) or loops around the coupling pin and lash the truck to the side.

⚠️ **DANGER**

**The truck may slip if the lashing straps slip!**

The truck must be lashed securely so that it cannot move during transportation.

– Make sure that the lashing straps are tightened securely and that the pads cannot slip off.
Towing

⚠️ DANGER

The brake system on the towing vehicle may fail. Risk of accident!

If the brake system of the towing vehicle is not adequately sized, the vehicle may not brake safely or the brakes may fail. The towing vehicle must be able to absorb the tractive and braking forces from the unbraked towed load (total actual weight of the truck).

- Check the tractive and braking forces of the towing vehicle.

⚠️ DANGER

The truck could drive into the towing vehicle when the towing vehicle brakes. Risk of accident!

If a rigid connection has not been used for power transmission in two directions during towing, the truck may drive into the towing vehicle when the towing vehicle brakes. For safety reasons, only a tested tow bar may be used.

- Use a tested tow bar.

⚠️ CAUTION

If the truck drive between the drive motor and the drive axle is not interrupted, the drive may be damaged.

- Place the drive direction switch in the neutral position.

⚠️ CAUTION

Risk of component damage!

If you remove the battery male connector when the key switch is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to erosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens their service life.

- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the key switch is switched on.
**DANGER**

People can be crushed between the truck and towing vehicle during manoeuvring. There is a risk of fatal injury!

The towing vehicle may only be manoeuvred and the tow bar may only be attached using a second person as a guide. This ensures that the driver of the towing vehicle and the mechanic attaching the tow bar are aware of possible risks.

– Only manoeuvre with a guide.

**CAUTION**

Steering is stiff! There is no power steering if the hydraulics fail!

– The selected towing speed must allow the truck and towing vehicle to be effectively braked and controlled at all times.

**CAUTION**

If the truck is not steered while it is being towed, it may veer out in an uncontrolled manner!

– The truck being towed must also be steered by a driver.

– The driver of the truck being towed must sit in the driver’s seat and fasten the seat belt before towing.

– Where possible, activate the restraint systems provided.

**CAUTION**

Component damage as a result of blocked brakes!

The truck is equipped with a negative spring-operated brake. As a result, when you switch off the truck, the multi-disc brakes in the drive wheel units block. For towing, the brake must be released at the brake valve. Otherwise, the truck is towed with the wheels blocked.

Once the spring-operated brake is released, pressure builds up gradually again in the brake hydraulics and the brakes can block again. Note the towing time when the key switch is switched off. The towing process must be interrupted in each case and the brake released again.

– Releasing the spring-operated brake

– Note the towing time and release the spring-operated brake again as necessary.

– Set down the load and lower the fork arms close to the ground.
Operating in special operating situations

- Place the drive direction switch in the neutral position.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Switch off the key switch.
- Disconnect the battery male connector.
- Check the tractive and braking forces of the towing vehicle.
- With the help of a guide, move the towing vehicle to the truck.
- Secure the tow bar to the tow coupling on the towing vehicle and the truck.
- Release the spring-operated brake
- Sit in the driver's seat in the truck to be towed and fasten the seat belt.
- Where possible, activate the restraint systems provided.
- Release the parking brake.
- Select a towing speed that allows the truck and towing vehicle to be effectively braked and controlled at all times.
- Tow the truck.
- Note the towing time (refer to the table in the section entitled "Releasing the spring-operated brake") and release the spring-operated brake again as necessary.
- After towing, secure the truck against rolling away (e.g. by applying the parking brake or using wedges).
- Remove the tow bar.

Crane loading

Crane loading is only intended for transporting the complete truck, including the lift mast, for its initial commissioning. For application conditions that require frequent loading or that are not dealt with here, please contact the manufacturer with regard to special equipment variants.
Trucks may only be laden by persons with sufficient experience with the suitable harnesses and hoists.

**Determining the loading weight**

- Park the truck securely; see the chapter entitled "Parking the truck securely".
- Determine the unit weights by reading them off the truck nameplate and, if necessary, the attachment (variant) nameplate.
- Add the determined unit weights to obtain the loading weight of the truck:
  - Unladen weight (1)
  - Max. permissible battery weight (2)
  - Ballast weight (variant) (3)
  - Attachment net weight (variant)
  = Loading weight

**Hooking on the lifting straps**

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Harnesses may damage the truck’s paintwork! Harnesses may damage paintwork by rubbing and pressing on the surface of the truck. Particularly hard or sharp-edged harnesses, such as wires or chains, can quickly damage the surface.

- Use textile harnesses, e.g. lifting straps, with edge protectors or similar protective devices where necessary.
DANGER

There is a risk of fatal injury if the hoists and harnesses fail and cause the truck to fall!

- Only use hoists and harnesses with sufficient load capacity for the determined loading weight.
- Only use the truck’s designated lifting points.
- Make sure that harness parts such as hooks, shackles, belts and similar items are only used in the indicated load direction.
- The harnesses must not be damaged by truck parts.

NOTE

The lifting points are indicated by a hook symbol.

- Loop the lifting straps around the main traverse (3) on the outer mast of the lift mast as shown.
– Loop the lifting straps around the counterweight (4) as shown.
– Determine the truck’s centre of gravity, see chapter entitled "Dimensions".

– Adjust the length of the harnesses so that the lifting eye (6) is vertically above the truck’s centre of gravity.

This ensures that the truck hangs level when lifted.
– Attach the lifting straps to the lifting eye and insert the safety device (5).

⚠️ CAUTION
Incorrectly fitted harnesses may damage attachment parts!
Pressure from the harnesses can damage or destroy attachment parts when the truck is lifted. If attachment parts are in the way (e.g. lighting, rear window, trademark emblem etc.), these must be removed before loading.
– Secure harnesses in such a way that they do not touch any attachment parts.
– Check that harnesses cannot come into contact with attachment parts.
Loading the truck

⚠️ **DANGER**

If the raised truck swings in an uncontrolled manner, it may crush people. There is a risk of fatal injury!

- Never walk or stand underneath suspended loads.
- Do not allow the truck to bump into anything whilst it is being lifted, or allow it to move in an uncontrolled manner.
- If necessary, hold the truck using guide ropes.

- Carefully lift the truck and set it down at the intended location.
Procedure in emergencies

Emergency shutdown

**WARNING**

There is no electric braking assistance when the emergency off switch is actuated! Actuating the emergency off switch will de-energise the entire electrical system.

- To brake, actuate the service brake.

**CAUTION**

Actuating the emergency off switch (1) or disconnecting the battery male connector (3) shuts down the electrical functions of the truck. This safety system must only be used in an emergency or to safely park the truck.

**CAUTION**

Risk of component damage!

If you remove the battery male connector while the key switch is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to corrosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens their service life.

- Switch off the key switch before the battery male connector is disconnected.
- Only disconnect the battery male connector while the key switch is switched on in an emergency.

In an emergency, all functions of the truck can be shut down:
Procedure in emergencies

- Press the emergency off switch (1) or open the fastener (4) of the battery male connector (3) by pulling the fastener to the left. Disconnect the battery male connector (3) from the plug connection by pulling the handle (2) in the direction of the arrow.

In drive mode, this has the following effect:
- No reduction in truck speed when the accelerator pedal is released, according to the drive program selected. The truck will roll to a stop
- The electric brake does not function during the first part of brake pedal depression. To brake the truck using the mechanical brake, the brake pedal must be pushed down further
- The truck can only be held on a slope using the mechanical brake, not the electric brake
- No power steering effect; the steering forces are increased by the remaining emergency steering function
- The "Curve Speed Control" system (automatic reduction of truck speed when cornering) does not function. The truck must be decelerated with the mechanical brake by pressing the brake pedal
- No hydraulic functions are available

Procedure if truck tips over

⚠️ DANGER

If the truck tips over, the driver could fall out and slide under the truck with potentially fatal consequences. There is a risk to life.

Failure to comply with the limits specified in these operating instructions, e.g. driving on unacceptably steep gradients or failing to adjust speed when cornering, can cause the truck to tip over. If the truck starts to tip over, do not leave the truck under any circumstances. This increases the danger of being hit by the truck.
- Do not release your seat belt.
- Never jump off the truck.
- You must adhere to the rules of behaviour if the truck tips over.

Rules of behaviour if truck tips over:
Hold onto the steering wheel with your hands.

Brace your feet in the footwell.

Bend your upper body over the steering wheel.

Bend your body against the direction of the fall.

**Emergency hammer**

The emergency hammer is used to rescue the driver if he is shut inside the cab in a hazardous situation, for example if the truck has toppled over and the cab door cannot be opened.

Single-pane safety glass can be struck relatively safely using the emergency hammer in order for the driver to escape or be rescued from the danger area.

**Using the emergency hammer**

**WARNING**

When glass is smashed there is a risk of injury caused by glass splinters!

When the cab glass is smashed, splinters of glass can shoot into the face and cause damage to skin and eyes through cuts. When a pane of glass is smashed, the face should be turned away and covered with the crook of the free arm.

Protect the face when smashing a pane of glass.

Pull the emergency hammer out of its support mounting at the handle.

Using one of the two metal tips on the head of the emergency hammer, hit the pane of glass with force until it breaks.

**Emergency lowering**

If the hydraulic controller fails whilst a load is raised, emergency lowering can be performed. An emergency lowering screw for this purpose is located on the control block.
Procedure in emergencies

**DANGER**
There is a risk of fatal injury from falling loads or parts of the truck being lowered.
- Do not walk beneath the raised load.
- Follow the steps described below.

**NOTE**
A hexagon socket wrench is located beneath the bottom plate on the brake valve for carrying out the steps detailed below. This hexagon socket wrench must remain in the truck at all times.
- Remove the bottom plate.
- Take the hexagon socket wrench (1) out of the support mounting.
- Open the front right cover.
– Loosen the emergency lowering screw (3) on the control block (2) by a maximum of 1.5 revolutions using the hexagon socket wrench.

– Screw the emergency lowering screw back in after the load is lowered.

– Return the hexagon socket wrench to the support mounting provided.

– Install the bottom plate.

– Close the front right cover.

⚠️ **WARNING**

The load is lowered!
The lowering speed is regulated by unscrewing the emergency lowering screw.

– Note the following list.

**Remember the following:**

- **Tightening torque:**
  - max. 2.5 Nm
- When unscrewed a little:
  - The load lowers slowly
- When unscrewed a lot:
  - The load lowers quickly

⚠️ **DANGER**

If the truck is operated with the hydraulic controller blocked, there is an increased risk of accidents!

– After the emergency lowering procedure, have the malfunction rectified.

– Notify the authorised service centre.

### Releasing the spring-operated brake

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Component damage as a result of blocked brakes!

In order to tow the truck, the multi-disc brakes must not be blocked in the drive wheel units.

– Repeatedly release the spring-operated brake during the towing process, in accordance with the table below.

The truck is equipped with a negative spring-operated brake. Switching off the truck will
block the multi-disc brakes in the drive wheel units after a few minutes. However, the truck can still be moved until the drive wheel units are blocked. In order to tow the truck, the spring-operated brake must be released by actuating the brake valve. Otherwise, the truck is towed with the wheels blocked.

**NOTE**

*The brake valve is installed in front of the driver’s seat beneath the bottom plate.*

The coupling pin from the counterweight can be used as an aid to actuate the brake valve. If there is no removable coupling pin available on the truck, for example, if the truck is equipped with an automatic tow coupling (variant), the bottom plate must be raised completely in order to access the brake valve.

Once the spring-operated brake is released, the pressure gradually drops again in the brake hydraulics and the brakes can block again. The towing process must be interrupted at certain times and the spring-operated brake released again, in accordance with the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hydraulic oil temperature °C</th>
<th>Period after releasing the spring-operated brake until it is blocked once again Minutes</th>
<th>Seconds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-20</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Actuate the brake valve by means of a coupling pin:**

- Take the coupling pin out of the counterweight.
– Grip the rubber tab in the rubber mat using the finger opening and pull up the tab.

– Insert the coupling pin (1) into the bore (2) on the bottom plate until the pin noticeably rests on the brake valve plate beneath.

– Repeatedly press the coupling pin down vertically. The spring-operated brake is released.

**NOTE**

*To fully release the spring-operated brake, press down on the brake valve plate at least 30 times. The pressure that builds up in the brake hydraulics as a result releases the spring-operated brake.*

– Once the spring-operated brake is released, fold the rubber tab in the rubber mat back down.

– Insert the coupling pin in the counterweight.

**Actuate the brake valve without a coupling pin:**

– Remove the rubber mat.

– Remove the bottom plate.
– Press the brake valve plate (3) down repeatedy.

The spring-operated brake is released.

**NOTE**

*To fully release the spring-operated brake, press down on the brake valve plate at least 30 times. The pressure that builds up in the brake hydraulics as a result releases the spring-operated brake.*

– After releasing the spring-operated brake, re-install the bottom plate and the rubber mat.

**WARNING**

Risk of injury through falling or slipping!

If the bottom plate is not inserted, there is a danger of footwear getting stuck, causing you to fall. Even when the bottom plate is installed, there is still a danger of slipping and injury if the rubber mat is not used.

– Install the bottom plate and rubber mat.
Handling the battery

Safety regulations when handling the battery

Maintenance personnel

⚠️ WARNING
Risk of crushing/shearing!
The battery is very heavy. There is a risk of serious injury if any parts of the body are caught under the battery.

If parts of the body are wedged between the battery cover and the edge of the chassis when the battery cover is closed, this could lead to injuries.

- Always wear safety footwear when replacing the battery.
- Only close the battery cover if there is no part of the body between the battery cover and the edge of the chassis.

The battery must only be replaced in accordance with the directions in these operating instructions.

When charging and maintaining the battery, observe the manufacturer’s maintenance instructions for the battery and battery charger.

Fire protection measures

⚠️ DANGER
Risk of explosion due to flammable gases!
During charging, the battery releases a mixture of oxygen and hydrogen (oxyhydrogen gas). This gas mixture is explosive and must not be ignited.

No flammable materials or spark-forming operating materials may be within 2 m of either the truck when it is parked for charging or the battery charger.

When working with batteries, take the following security precautions.

- Keep away from open flames and do not smoke.
Handling the battery

– Always ensure adequate ventilation in the vicinity.
– Disconnect the battery male connector before charging and only when the truck and battery charger are switched off.
– Battery cover must remain open during charging.
– Expose the surfaces of the battery cells.
– Do not place any metal objects on the battery.
– Open any protective structures fully (e.g. fabric-covered cab).
– Have fire extinguishing equipment ready.

Lifting accessory

The battery can be removed using the following lifting accessories:
• For trucks, see chapter entitled "Replacing a battery using a truck"

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of accident!
The battery could fall from the lifting accessory or the lifting accessory could tip over or become damaged. If this happens, there is a risk to life.
The battery must only be removed when the truck is on level, smooth ground with sufficient load capacity. The load capacity of the lifting accessory used (see operating instructions or nameplate) must at least match the battery weight (see battery identification plate).
– Ensure the load capacity of the lifting accessory.
– Remove the battery on suitable ground.

Battery weight and dimensions

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of tipping due to change in battery weight!
The battery weight and dimensions affect the stability of the truck. When replacing the battery, the weight ratios must not be changed. The battery weight must remain within the weight range specified on the nameplate.
– Do not remove or change the position of ballast weights.
– Note the battery weight.
Damage to cables and battery male connectors

⚠️ CAUTION

There is a risk of short circuit if the cables are damaged.
The battery cable must not be crushed when closing the battery cover.
– Check the battery cable for damage.
– When removing and reinstalling the battery, ensure that the battery cables are not damaged.
– Ensure that the battery cable does not come into contact with the battery cover.

⚠️ CAUTION

Possible damage to the battery male connector!
If the battery male connector is disconnected or connected while the key switch is switched on or the battery charger is under load, an arc will be produced at the battery male connector. This can lead to corrosion at the contacts, and can considerably shorten the service life of the contacts.
– Switch off the key switch or battery charger before the battery male connector is disconnected or connected.
– Only disconnect the battery male connector while under load in an emergency.

Changing to a different battery type

It is generally possible for a truck to be converted to a different battery type and a different capacity by the authorised service centre.

Note the following points:
• The display-operating unit must be adjusted to the new battery capacity.
  If this is not done, the actual battery discharge status cannot be determined. The battery charge level is not displayed correctly.
  In the worst case, the battery may be damaged by a deep discharge.
  – Contact your authorised service centre.
NOTE
When converting to PowerPlusLife® batteries, the maximum speed of the truck can be increased to 20 km/h.
• Contact your authorised service centre.

NOTE
When converting from PowerPlusLife® batteries to other batteries, the maximum speed of the truck must be limited to 17 km/h for technical reasons.
• Contact your authorised service centre.

Opening and closing the battery cover

Opening the battery cover

WARNING
Risk of injury from the battery cover lowering!
The battery cover (1) is equipped with gas springs that hold it in the opened position. When additional load is present, for example through heavy objects, strong wind or other persons, the battery cover can lower suddenly. Cold weather and ageing can also reduce the performance of the gas springs and cause the cover to lower.
– Make sure that the battery cover is not being pushed down by strong winds or other persons.
– If the gas springs no longer hold the battery cover independently, notify your authorised service centre.
– Unlock the quick release clamp (1) with a 1/4 turn in a clockwise direction.
– Open the battery cover lock (3) using the key.
– To release the battery cover, pull the handle (4) and at the same time use the other handle (2) to swivel the battery cover upwards.

**NOTE**
_Beneath the battery cover, there is a latch that engages in the upper position of the battery cover and prevents accidental closing._

– Make sure that the safety hook (1) engages in the gap on the bracket (2).

**Closing the battery cover**

**CAUTION**
When closing the battery cover, limbs could become trapped — risk of crushing!
When closing the battery cover, nothing should come between the battery cover and the edge of the chassis.
– Do not grasp any edges. Always close the battery cover by grasping one of the handles in each hand.
– Close the battery cover carefully.
– Only close the battery cover if there are no parts of the body in the way.
Handling the battery

- To close the battery cover, take hold of the handles (2) and (4) at the same time and pull down firmly.
- Make sure that the battery cover lock engages when you close it.
- Lock the battery cover lock (3) using the key.
- Lock the quick release clamp (1) with a 1/4 turn in an anti-clockwise direction.

NOTE

The battery cover is only correctly locked if the top section of the handle (4) closes flush with the cover.

Disconnecting the battery male connector

⚠️ CAUTION

Risk of component damage!
If you remove the battery male connector while the key switch is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to corrosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens their service life.
- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the key switch is switched on.

⚠️ CAUTION

There is a risk of short circuit if the cables are damaged.
Do not crush the battery cable when closing the battery cover.

- Ensure that the key switch is switched off.
- Open the battery cover.
– Open the fastener (4) for the battery male connector (3) by pulling the fastener to the left.

– Disconnect the battery male connector (3) from the plug connection by pulling the handle (2) in the direction of the arrow.

– Check the battery cable for damage.

– Hang the battery male connector (3) on the front edge of the battery tray (1).

**CAUTION**

When closing the battery cover, there is a risk of damage to the battery male connector!

When closing the battery cover, the battery cover may collide with the battery male connector that has been hung on the battery tray. As a result, the battery male connector may become damaged. If this is the case, the battery male connector must then be replaced.

– Leave the battery cover open.
Checking the battery charge status

**CAUTION**

Deep discharges shorten the service life of the battery.

If there are no bars on the battery charge display (1) (0% of the available battery capacity, i.e. around 20% of the nominal capacity), it indicates the start of deep discharge.

- Avoid deep discharge (no bar on the display).
- Cease work with the truck immediately.
- Charge the batteries immediately.
- Do not leave batteries in a discharged or partly discharged state.

- Apply the parking brake.
- Switch on the key switch.
- Read the battery charge (1) on the display.
- Charge a discharged or partly discharged battery.

**NOTE**

The battery charge displays shows the available battery capacity as a segmented bar graph in 10% increments. Approx. every 10 seconds, the display switches between the battery charge and the remaining operating time.

Charging the battery

**DANGER**

Risk to life!

- Observe the chapter entitled "Safety regulations for handling the battery" without fail.

**WARNING**

Battery acid is toxic and corrosive!

- Observe the safety regulations in the "Battery acid" chapter.
Risk of component damage!
Incorrect connection or operation of the charging station or battery charger may result in damage to components!

– Follow the operating instructions for the charging station or battery charger and for the battery.

Possible damage to the male battery connector!

– Ensure that the key switch or battery charger is switched off before the battery male connector is disconnected or connected.

Battery maintenance is carried out in accordance with the battery manufacturer’s operating instructions! The operating instructions for the battery charger must also be followed. Only the instructions that came with the battery charger are valid. If any of these instructions are not available, please request them from the dealer.

A 640-A battery male connector/230-A battery charger plug adaptor cable is available as an accessory from the authorised service centre.

– Park the truck securely.
– Switch off the key switch.
– Always ensure adequate ventilation in the vicinity.
– Open any protective structures fully (e.g. fabric-covered cab).
– Open the battery cover.
Operation

Handling the battery

- Open the fastener (4) for the battery male connector (3) by pulling the fastener to the left.
- Disconnect the battery male connector (3) from the plug connection by pulling the handle (2) in the direction of the arrow.
- Do not place any metal objects or tools on the battery.
- Keep away from open flames and do not smoke.
- Inspect the battery cables and charging cables for damage; change if necessary.

- Use the handle (4) to hang the battery charger plug (5) on the front edge of the battery tray (1).
- Hold the battery male connector (3) by the handle (2) and insert the battery male connector into the battery charger plug (5).
- Push the fastener (6) for the battery charger plug completely to the right to retract the battery male connector into the battery charger plug and to secure the battery male connector in position.

**NOTE**

*Follow the information in the operating instructions for your battery and the battery charger (equalising charge).*

**CAUTION**

When using PowerPlusLife® batteries, ensure good circulation of cooling air.

The cooling air inlet and cooling air outlet must not be covered. Otherwise, the air cannot circulate through the air ducts and the battery will heat up too much.

- Make sure that no cloths or rags etc. cover the cooling air inlet and cooling air outlet.

- Start the battery charger.

Once the charging process is complete:

- Switch off the battery charger.
– Open the fastener (6) for the battery charger plug (5) by pulling the fastener to the left.

– Disconnect the battery male connector (3) from the battery charger plug by pulling the handle (2) in the direction of the arrow.

– Pick up the battery charger plug using the handle (4) and remove the battery charger plug from the battery tray (1).

– Hold the battery male connector (2) by the handle (1) and insert the battery male connector into the plug connection on the truck.

– Push the fastener (3) completely to the right to retract the battery male connector into the plug connection and to secure the battery male connector in position.

– Ensure that the battery cable does not come into contact with the battery cover.

– Close the battery cover completely. When doing so, ensure that no cable is crushed between the chassis and the cover.

**Equalising charge to prevent a deep discharge of the battery**

Lead-acid batteries must be charged at least once per week for equalisation purposes. This is to ensure that all battery cells are evenly charged. This prevents a deep discharge of the battery and extends its life span.

**NOTE**

*Dependent on the battery charger used, the equalising charge might not begin until 24 hours have elapsed. Therefore, a period when*
Handling the battery

No shifts are running, such as the weekend, is ideal for performing the equalising charge.

- Observe the information in the operating instructions of the charger regarding how to perform an equalising charge.

Starting the equalising charge

- Charge the battery.

- After charging, leave the battery in the charger.

The battery charger remains switched on. Depending on the battery charger used, the equalising charge starts after between 6 and 24 hours. The equalising charge takes up to 2 hours.

- Please refer to the operating instructions from the manufacturer of the battery charger.

Ending the equalising charge

The equalising charge ends automatically. If the battery is required during this process, you can interrupt the equalising charge by pressing the "stop button" on the battery charger.

- Please refer to the operating instructions from the manufacturer of the battery charger.

⚠️ CAUTION

Risk of component damage!

If the plug for the battery charger is disconnected from the battery male connector while the battery charger is switched on, an arc is produced. This can lead to erosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens their service life.

- Switch off the battery charger before disconnecting the charging cable.

- Switch off the battery charger.

- Disconnect the battery male connector from the battery charger plug.

- Insert the battery male connector fully into the plug connection on the truck.
Replacing the battery using a truck

⚠️ **DANGER**

Risk to life!
- Observe the chapter entitled "Safety regulations for handling the battery" without fail.

**Preparation**

The load capacity of the truck used must at least match the battery weight (see battery identification plate).

- Check the load capacity of the truck.
- Make sure that the floor is suitable for battery removal.
- Switch off the key switch.
- Open the battery cover.

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the key switch is switched on!
- Ensure that the key switch is switched off.

- Open the fastener (4) for the battery male connector (3) by pulling the fastener to the left.
- Disconnect the battery male connector (3) from the plug connection by pulling the handle (2) in the direction of the arrow.
- Check the battery cable for damage.
Handling the battery

- Hang the battery male connector (3) on the front edge of the battery tray (1).
- When removing the battery cable, make sure that it does not come into contact with any components.

- Adjust the distance (A) between the fork arms of the truck to match the distance (A) between the forked fittings in the battery base frame.
- Swivel the battery lock (1) upwards.

The battery lock is held in the raised position by means of the tension spring. The battery can be accessed as required.
Taking up the battery

**WARNING**

Risk of crushing/shearing!
Personnel must not stand directly next to the battery or between the battery and the truck when removing and inserting the battery with the truck.

- Determine the length of the battery base frame and, starting from the fork tip, mark one of the fork arms; dimension (B).
- Move the fork arms carefully up to the mark in the forked fittings in the battery base frame.
- Carefully lift the battery and battery base frame up and out of the truck. When doing so, pay attention to the distance to the chassis.
- Carefully remove the battery and the battery base frame from the truck, i.e. at a low speed, using slow steering movements and braking carefully.
- Set the battery and battery base frame down carefully.

The battery always remains on the battery base frame.

Installing the battery

**CAUTION**

Damage to the battery possible!
If the battery is not used in the truck in conjunction with the battery base frame, the battery cannot be securely positioned in the battery compartment. The battery can tip over in the battery compartment. This may cause damage to the battery and the truck components.
- Always use the battery in conjunction with the battery base frame.
- Pick up the new battery along with the battery base frame and carefully transport it to the truck.
Handling the battery

- Make sure to hang the battery male connector (3) on the front edge of the battery tray (1), and ensure that the battery cable does not become trapped during installation.
- Position the battery at a right angle to the truck.

The slide rail (1) serves as an installation aid and guides the battery base frame at a right angle into the battery compartment.

The impact protection (2) protects the flap support from damage during insertion of the battery.

The detent cams (3) must engage in the battery base frame when the battery is lowered. When the detent cams are engaged, the battery is prevented from slipping sideways out of the battery compartment.
– Carefully insert the battery into the battery compartment. When doing so, take note of the adjustment and entry aids (3) on the left of the battery compartment.

**NOTE**

The battery must be guided in flush against the adjustment and entry aids (3). This will help the driver to insert the battery without it getting stuck on the truck.

Once the battery is positioned correctly in the battery compartment:

– Carefully lower the battery.

– Check that the detent cams (2) are fully engaged in the bores (1) and that the battery is level.

– If the battery is not positioned correctly, repeat this process.

– Carefully move the fork arms out from the battery base frame.
5 Operation

Handling the battery

– Swivel the battery lock (1) downwards.

– Hold the battery male connector (2) by the handle (1) and insert the battery male connector into the plug connection on the truck.

– Push the fastener (3) completely to the right to retract the battery male connector into the plug connection and to secure the battery male connector in position.

– Ensure that the battery cable cannot come into contact with the battery cover.

– Close the battery cover.
PowerPlusLife battery

PowerPlusLife® battery

The PowerPlusLife® battery is an air-cooled lead-acid battery. The self-cooling feature gives this battery significant advantages over conventional lead-acid batteries which heat up during operation and whilst charging, and stay hot for a long time.

The PowerPlusLife® battery is a protected in-house development by STILL GmbH.

Advantages of the PowerPlusLife® battery:
• Higher driving speeds and greater handling performance
• Longer battery life, even under severe conditions
• Continuous temperature-controlled self-cooling, even when removed from the truck and not connected to a battery charger
• Ready for use again more quickly after charging
• Less heat radiated into the driver’s compartment

NOTE

When converting to PowerPlusLife® batteries, the maximum speed of the truck can be increased to 20 km/h.

• Contact your authorised service centre.
Cooling air flow

**CAUTION**

If the cooling air flow is low, the cooling of the battery malfunctions.

Do not cover the intake openings (1) and air distributors (2) on the battery. Otherwise, the cooling air flow cannot circulate through the air ducts. The battery will then heat up too much.

- Make sure that the intake openings and air distributors stay open.
- When installing and removing the battery, check the intake openings and air distributors for dirt.

---

PowerPlusLife® temperature monitoring

The control unit detects the core temperature of the battery and adjusts the fan control for cooling. The LEDs continuously indicate the cooling state of the battery.

If the red LED (1) is illuminated, the battery temperature is high and cooling is active.

If the yellow LED (2) is illuminated, battery cooling is active.

If the green LED (3) is illuminated, the battery is ready for use.

Especially when PowerPlusLife® batteries are used for mixed applications, the temperature monitoring function makes it clear whether the battery has cooled down sufficiently after charging and is now ready for use.

- If the red LED (1) is illuminated, allow the battery to cool down further until the red LED goes out.
PowerPlusLife® error messages

One of the three LEDs is always lit up to indicate the cooling status of the PowerPlusLife® battery. If an LED changes from being permanently illuminated to flashing, it indicates that an error message has been generated. The error message is independent of the colour of the LED. In the event of a fault, it is always the LED that is currently illuminated that flashes.

The following error messages are indicated by a flashing LED:

Fluid level

The fluid level in the PowerPlusLife® battery is checked by a sensor.

If an LED slowly flashes alternately, it indicates that the fluid level is too low.

- Top up the fluid; see the chapter entitled "Servicing the battery".

Internal error

If an LED flashes at frequent intervals, it indicates the presence of an internal fault.

The error can be read using the diagnostics function. The diagnostic connector (1) is located on the battery management device, on the right alongside the LEDs.

- Contact your authorised service centre.
Decommissioning

Parking the truck securely and switching it off

⚠️ DANGER
Risk of fatal injury from being run over if the truck rolls away!
- The truck must not be parked on a slope.
- In emergencies, secure with wedges on the side facing downhill.
- Only leave the truck when the parking brake has been applied.

⚠️ DANGER
There is a risk of fatal injury from a falling load or parts of the truck being lowered!
- Lower the load fully before leaving the truck.

⚠️ CAUTION
Batteries may freeze!
If the truck is parked in an ambient temperature of below -10°C for an extended period, the batteries will cool down. The electrolyte may freeze and damage the batteries. The truck will then not be ready for operation.
- At ambient temperatures of below -10°C, only park the truck for short periods of time.
- Apply the parking brake.
– Lower the fork carriage to the ground.
– Tilt the lift mast forwards until the tips of the fork arms rest on the ground.
– If attachments (variant) are fitted, retract the working cylinders; see the chapter entitled "General instructions for controlling attachments".
– Turn the switch key to the left and remove it.

– Press the emergency off switch (1).

**NOTE**

*Switch keys, FleetManager cards (variant), FleetManager transponder chips (variant) and the PIN code for access authorisation (variant) must not be handed over to other persons unless explicit instructions to this effect have been given.*
Wheel chock (variant)

The wheel chock (variant) is used to prevent the truck from rolling away on a slope.

- Lift handle (2) on the support mounting.
- Remove wheel chock (1) from the support mounting.
- Push the wheel chock under a front axle wheel on the side facing the downhill slope.

**NOTE**

After use, return the wheel chock to the support mounting and press the handle (2) down again.

Shutting down and storing the truck

**CAUTION**

Component damage due to incorrect storage!

If the truck is stored or shut down in an improper manner for more than two months, it may suffer corrosion damage. If the truck is parked in an ambient temperature of below -10°C for an extended period, the batteries will cool down. The electrolyte may freeze and damage the batteries.

- Implement the following measures before shutting down.

**CAUTION**

Risk of component damage!

If you remove the battery male connector while the key switch is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to corrosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens their service life.

- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the key switch is switched on.
CAUTION

Tyre deformation as a result of continuous loading on one side!
Have the truck raised and jacked up by the authorised service centre so that all wheels are off the ground. This will prevent permanent deformation of the tyres.

CAUTION

Danger of damage from corrosion due to condensation on the truck!
Many plastic films and synthetic materials are watertight. Condensation water on the truck cannot escape through these covers.

- Do not use plastic film as this facilitates the formation of condensation water.

NOTE

Only store batteries that are fully charged.

Measures to be implemented before shutdown

- Store the truck in a dry, clean, frost-free and well-ventilated environment.
- Clean the truck thoroughly; see the chapter entitled “Cleaning”.
- Lift the fork carriage to the stop several times.
- Tilt the lift mast forwards and backwards several times and, if fitted, move attachment repeatedly.
- To relieve the strain on the load chains, lower the fork onto a suitable supporting surface, e.g. a pallet.
- Check the hydraulic oil level and top up if required.
- Apply a thin layer of oil or grease to all untreated moving parts.
- Grease the truck.
- Lubricate the joints and controls.
- Lubricate the battery cover interlock.
- Ensure that the key switch is switched off, then disconnect the battery male connector.
Decommissioning

– Check the battery condition, acid level and acid density.
– Service the battery.
– Spray all exposed electrical contacts with a suitable contact spray.
– Only have the truck raised and jacked up by the authorised service centre.
– Cover the truck with vapour-permeable materials, such as cotton, in order to protect against dust.
– If the truck is to be shut down for even longer periods, contact your authorised service centre to find out about additional measures.

Re-commissioning after shutdown

If the truck has been shut down for longer than six months, it must be carefully checked before being re-commissioned. As in the annual inspection, this check should also include all safety items for the truck.

– Clean the truck thoroughly; see the chapter entitled "Cleaning".
– Oil joints and controls.
– Check the battery condition and acid density, and recharge if necessary.
– Check the hydraulic oil for condensation water and replace if necessary.
– Carry out checks and operations before the first commissioning.
– Put the truck into operation.

During commissioning, the following must be checked in particular:
• Drive, controller, steering
• Brakes (service brake, parking brake)
• Lifting system (lifting accessories, load chains, mounting)
**NOTE**

*For further information, see the truck workshop manual or contact the authorised service centre.*
Cleaning

Cleaning the truck

– Park the truck securely.

**CAUTION**

Risk of component damage!

If you remove the battery male connector with the key switch switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to corrosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens their service life.

– Switch off the key switch before the battery male connector is disconnected.

– Only disconnect the battery male connector with the key switch switched on in an emergency.

– Disconnect the battery male connector.

**WARNING**

There is a risk of injury due to falling when climbing onto the truck!

When climbing onto the truck, you can get stuck or slip on components and fall. Higher points on the truck should only be accessed using the appropriate equipment.

– Adhere strictly to the following steps.

– Use only the steps provided to climb onto the truck.

– Use equipment such as stepladders or platforms to reach inaccessible areas.

Preparing the truck for cleaning

**CAUTION**

If water penetrates the electrical system, there is a risk of short circuit!

– Adhere strictly to the following steps.

– Switch the electrical system off before cleaning.

– Do not spray electric motors and other electrical components or their covers directly with water.
Operation 5
Cleaning

**CAUTION**

Excessive water pressure or water and steam that are too hot can damage truck components.

– Adhere strictly to the following steps.

– Only use high-pressure cleaners with a maximum output power of 50 bar and at a maximum temperature of 85°C.

– When using high-pressure cleaners, make sure there is a distance of at least 20 cm between the nozzle and the object being cleaned.

– Do not aim the cleaning jet directly at adhesive labels or decal information.

---

**DANGER**

Risk of fire!

Deposits/accumulations of combustible materials may ignite in the vicinity of hot components (e.g. drive units).

– Adhere strictly to the following steps.

– Regularly remove all deposits/accumulations of foreign materials in the vicinity of hot components.

---

**DANGER**

Flammable fluids can be ignited by hot components on the truck, causing a risk of fire!

– Adhere strictly to the following steps.

– Do not use flammable fluids for cleaning.

– Note the manufacturer’s guidelines for working with cleaning materials.

---

**CAUTION**

Abrasive cleaning materials can damage component surfaces!

Using abrasive cleaning materials that are unsuitable for plastics may dissolve plastic parts or make them brittle. The screen on the display operating unit may become cloudy.

– Adhere strictly to the following steps.
Cleaning

– Only clean plastic parts with plastic cleaning materials.
– Note the manufacturer’s guidelines for working with cleaning materials.

Washing the truck exterior

– Clean the truck exterior with water-soluble cleaning materials and water (water jet, sponge, cloth).
– Clean all walk-in areas, the oil filling openings and their surroundings, and the lubricating nipples before lubricating.

NOTE

Please note: The more often the truck is cleaned, the more frequently it must be lubricated.

Cleaning the electrical system

⚠️ WARNING

Danger of electric shocks due to residual capacity!
– Never reach into the electrical system with your bare hands.

⚠️ CAUTION

Cleaning electrical system parts with water can damage the electrical system.
Cleaning electrical system parts with water is forbidden!
– Do not remove covers etc.
– Use only dry cleaning materials in accordance with the manufacturer’s specifications.

– Clean the electrical system parts with a metal-free brush and blow the dust off with low-pressure compressed air.
Cleaning load chains

⚠️ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Load chains are safety elements. The use of cold/chemical cleaners or fluids that are corrosive or contain acid or chlorine can damage the chains and is forbidden!
- Observe the manufacturer’s guidelines for working with cleaning materials.
- Place a collection vessel under the lift mast.
- Clean with paraffin derivatives, such as benzine.
- When using a steam jet, do not use additional cleaning agents.
- Remove any water in the chain links using compressed air immediately after cleaning. Move the chain several times during this procedure.
- Immediately after drying the chain, spray it with chain spray. Move the chain several times during this procedure.

For chain spray specifications, see the "Maintenance data table" chapter.

🚀 ENVIRONMENT NOTE

Dispose of any fluid that has been spilled or collected in the collection vessel in an environmentally friendly manner. Follow the statutory regulations.

Cleaning the windows

Any panes of glass, e.g. cab windows (variant), must always be kept clean and free of ice. This is the only means of guaranteeing good visibility.

⚠️ CAUTION

Do not damage the rear window heater (inside)!
- Take great care when cleaning the rear window and do not use any objects with sharp edges.
5 Cleaning

- Clean the windows using a commercially available glass cleaner.

After washing

- Carefully dry truck (e.g. with compressed air).
- Sit on the driver’s seat and start up the truck in accordance with regulations.

⚠️ CAUTION

Danger of short-circuits!
- If any moisture has penetrated into the motors despite the precautionary measures taken, this must first be dried with compressed air.
- The truck must then be started up to prevent possible corrosion damage.
6

Maintenance
General maintenance information

Personnel qualifications

Only qualified and authorised personnel are allowed to perform maintenance work. The annual testing must be carried out by a qualified person. The examination and assessment of the qualified person must be unaffected by operational and economic conditions and must be conducted solely from a safety perspective. He/she must have sufficient knowledge and experience to be able to assess the condition of a truck and the effectiveness of the protective devices in accordance with technical conventions and the principles for testing trucks.

Maintenance personnel for batteries

Batteries may only be charged, maintained or changed by properly trained personnel in accordance with the instructions from the manufacturers of the battery, battery charger and truck. The handling instructions for the battery and the operating instructions for the battery charger must be followed.

Maintenance work without special qualifications

Simple maintenance work, e.g. checking the hydraulic oil level, may be carried out by untrained personnel. A qualification, like that of a specialist, is not required to carry out this work. The required operations are described in sufficient detail in the corresponding places in these operating instructions.

Information for carrying out maintenance

This section contains all information required to determine when the truck needs maintenance. Carry out maintenance work within the time limits according to the hour meter and using the following maintenance check lists. This is the only way to ensure that the truck remains ready for operation and provides op-
timal performance and service life. It is also a precondition for any warranty claims.

**Maintenance timeframe**

– Carry out maintenance work on the truck in accordance with the "Service in" display (1).

– The maintenance check lists indicate the maintenance work that is due.

The intervals are defined for standard use. Shorter maintenance intervals can be defined in consultation with the operating company, depending on the application conditions of the truck.

The following factors may necessitate shorter maintenance intervals:

• Contaminated, poor quality roads
• Dusty or salty air
• High levels of air humidity
• Extremely high or low ambient temperatures, or extreme changes in temperature
• Multi-shift operation with a high duty cycle
• Specific national regulations for the truck or individual components
## Maintenance - 1000 hours/annually

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>At operating hours</th>
<th>Carried out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8000</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10000</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chassis, bodywork and fittings
- Check the chassis for cracks
- Check the overhead guard/cab and panes of glass for damage
- Check the controls, switches and joints for damage, and apply grease and oil
- Check the driver’s seat for correct function and for damage
- Check the driver restraint system for correct function and for damage, and clean
- Check the battery cover and interlock for correct function and for damage
- Check the battery lock for correct function and for damage
- Check the indexing bolt for the battery pallet lock for damage
- Check the dual pedal (variant) for correct function and for damage, and lubricate

### Tyres and wheels
- Check tyres for wear. If pneumatic tyres are fitted, check the air pressure
- Check the wheels for damage and check the tightening torques.

### Power unit
- Drive axle: Check mounting, check for leaks, clean cooling fins
- Check the gearbox oil level
- Change gearbox oil (once after 1000 hours)

### Steering
- Check the steering system for correct function and for leaks
- Check that the steering wheel is securely attached and check the turning handle for damage
- Steering axle: Check that the steering axle is securely attached, check for leaks and apply grease
- Check the steering stop

### Brake
- Check the condition of all mechanical brake parts and check for correct function
- Check the brake valve for correct function and leaks
- Check the service brake for correct function
- Check the parking brake for correct function
General maintenance information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>At operating hours</th>
<th>Carried out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7000</td>
<td>✔  x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Electrical system**
- Check all power cable connections
- Check the contacts of the main contactors.
- Check the switches, transmitters and sensors for correct function
- Check the lighting and indicator lights

**Cooling system (power electronics and hydraulics)**
- Check the cooling fluid level and coolant content
- Check for correct function and leaks
- Clean the radiator, radiator grilles, exhaust air funnel and water outlet

**Battery and accessories**
- Check battery for damage and acid density; observe manufacturer’s maintenance instructions
- Electrolyte circulation: replace the non-return valve
- Check the battery pallet for damage.
- Check the interlock and indexing bolts in the chassis for damage.
- Check the appliance plug and truck harness for damage.
- Check the battery male connector and battery harness for damage

**Hydraulics**
- Check the condition of the hydraulic system, and check for correct function and leaks
- Check the hydraulics blocking function (ISO valve)
- Check the oil level

**Lift mast**
- Check the mast bearings for damage, lubricate them, and check the tightening torque
- Check the mast profiles for damage and wear. Lubricate the mast profiles
- Check the load chains for damage and wear. Adjust and lubricate the load chains
- Check the lift cylinders and connections for damage and leaks
- Check the guide pulleys for damage and wear
- Check the support rollers and chain rollers for damage and wear
- Check the play between the fork carriage stop and the run-out barrier
### General maintenance information

#### At operating hours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1000</th>
<th>2000</th>
<th>4000</th>
<th>5000</th>
<th>7000</th>
<th>8000</th>
<th>10000</th>
<th>11000</th>
<th>13000</th>
<th>14000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carried out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Check the tilt cylinders and connections for damage and leaks
- Check the fork carriage for damage and wear
- Check the fork arm interlock for damage and correct function
- Check the fork arms for wear and deformation
- Check that there is a safety screw on the fork carriage or on the attachment
- Check the auxiliary hydraulics hoses for damage

#### Special equipment

- Heating system: Replace the fresh air filter
- Heating system: Replace the recirculated air filter
- Check the heating system for damage; observe the manufacturer’s maintenance instructions
- Check the attachments for wear and damage; observe the manufacturer’s maintenance instructions
- Check the trailer coupling for wear and damage; observe the manufacturer’s maintenance instructions

#### General

- Read out the error numbers and delete the list
- Reset the maintenance interval
- Check the labelling to ensure it is complete
- Perform a test drive
General maintenance information

Maintenance - 3000 hours/every two years

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>At operating hours</th>
<th>Carried out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3000</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6000</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9000</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12000</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15000</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note

Perform all 1000-hour maintenance work.

Power unit

Change the gearbox oil

Cooling system (power electronics and hydraulics)

Change the cooling fluid (every 2 years)

Hydraulics

Change the hydraulic oil

Change the return line filter, breather filter and high-pressure filter

Replace the accumulator (variant)

Ordering spare parts and wearing parts

Spare parts are provided by our spare parts service department. The information required for ordering parts can be found in the spare parts list.

Only use spare parts as per the manufacturer’s instructions. The use of unapproved spare parts can result in an increased risk of accidents due to insufficient quality or incorrect assignment. Anyone using unapproved spare parts shall assume unlimited liability in the event of damage or harm.

Quality and quantity of the required operating materials

Only the operating materials specified in the maintenance data table may be used.

- The required consumables and lubricants can be found in the maintenance data table.

Oil and grease types of a different quality must not be mixed. This negatively affects
the lubricity. If a change between different manufacturers cannot be avoided, drain the old oil thoroughly.

Before carrying out lubricating work, filter changes or any work on the hydraulic system, carefully clean the area around the part involved.

When topping up working materials, use only clean containers!
### Lubrication Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Lubrication point</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(A)</td>
<td>Four lubricating nipples on each side of the steering axle for the axle stub bearing and track rod arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B)</td>
<td>Sliding surfaces on the lift mast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C)</td>
<td>Load chains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(D)</td>
<td>One lubricating nipple on each of the two lift mast bearings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹See the following chapter, "Maintenance data table", under this Code. for the respective lubricant specification. This lubrication plan describes the series-production truck with standard equipment. For maintenance points on variant trucks, see the relevant chapter and/or instructions provided by the manufacturer.
## Maintenance data table

### General lubrication points

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Operating material</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High-pressure grease</td>
<td>ID no. 0147873</td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Battery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Operating material</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Distilled water</td>
<td>As required</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insulation resistance</td>
<td></td>
<td>DIN 43539 VDE 0510</td>
<td>For further information, refer to the workshop manual for the truck in question.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Electrical system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Operating material</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insulation resistance</td>
<td></td>
<td>DIN EN 1175 VDE 0117</td>
<td>For further information, refer to the workshop manual for the truck in question.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Controls/joints

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Operating material</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lubrication</td>
<td>High-pressure grease</td>
<td>ID no. 0147873</td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oil</td>
<td>SAE 80 MIL-L2105 API-GL4</td>
<td>As required</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dual pedal operation</td>
<td>High-pressure grease</td>
<td>ID no. 0147873</td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hydraulic system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Operating material</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>System contents</td>
<td>Hydraulic oil</td>
<td>HVLP 68 or ISO VG 68 DIN 51524, part 2</td>
<td>Max. 125 l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>USDA H1 DIN 51524</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Tyres

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Operating material</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum tread depth</td>
<td>Min. 1.6 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Wear limit</td>
<td>To wear mark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## AL80-01 steering axle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Operating material</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wheel nuts/screws</td>
<td>Torque wrench</td>
<td>DIN 74361-A 20-10 A2C</td>
<td>640 Nm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A)</td>
<td>Axle stub bearing, spherical bearing</td>
<td>Grease</td>
<td>Aralub 4320 DIN 51825- KPF2N20 ID no. 0148659</td>
<td>Fill with grease until a small amount of fresh grease escapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A)</td>
<td>Wheel bearing, wheel bearing rotary shaft seal</td>
<td>Grease</td>
<td>DIN 51825-KP2 K-30, lithium-saponified ID no. 0163488</td>
<td>Fill with grease</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## AE80-02 drive axle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Operating material</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wheel nuts/screws</td>
<td>Torque wrench</td>
<td>DIN 74361-A 20-10 A2C</td>
<td>640 Nm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Lift mast

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Operating material</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(B)</td>
<td>Lubrication</td>
<td>High-pressure grease</td>
<td>ID no. 0147873</td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop</td>
<td>Play</td>
<td>Cylinder head bolt M24x90-12.9 ISO 4762</td>
<td></td>
<td>Min. 2 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Screws for the lift mast bearing</td>
<td>Torque wrench</td>
<td>Aralub 4320 DIN 51825- KPF2N20 ID no. 0148659</td>
<td>Fill with grease until a small amount of fresh grease escapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(D)</td>
<td>Lift mast bearing</td>
<td>Grease</td>
<td>Aralub 4320 DIN 51825- KPF2N20 ID no. 0148659</td>
<td>Fill with grease until a small amount of fresh grease escapes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Load chains

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Operating material</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(C)</td>
<td>Lubrication</td>
<td>High-load chain spray</td>
<td>Fully synthetic Temperature range: -35°C to +250°C ID no. 0156428</td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Cooling system (power electronics/hydraulic oil)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Operating material</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System contents</td>
<td>Corrosion inhibitor and cooling system protecting agent/water</td>
<td>40% coolant/60% water, for frost protection down to -25°C VW G12 plus (violet) TL-VW 774 F</td>
<td>Approx. 4.5l</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Washer system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Operating material</th>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System contents</td>
<td>Washer fluid</td>
<td>Winter, ID no. 172566</td>
<td>As required</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Safety regulations for maintenance

General information
To prevent accidents during maintenance and repair work, all necessary safety measures must be taken, e.g.:

– Apply the parking brake.
– Turn off the key switch and remove the key.
– Disconnect the battery male connector.
– Ensure that the truck cannot move unintentionally or start up inadvertently.
– If required, have the truck jacked up by the authorised service centre.
– Have the raised fork carriage or the extended lift mast secured against accidental lowering by the authorised service centre.
– Insert an appropriately sized wooden beam as an abutment between the lift mast and the cab, and secure the lift mast to prevent it tilting backwards unintentionally.
– Observe the maximum lift height of the lift mast, and compare the dimensions from the technical data with the dimensions of the hall into which the truck is to be driven. These steps are taken to prevent a collision with the ceiling of the hall and to avoid any damage caused as a result.

Working on the hydraulic equipment
The hydraulic system must be depressurised prior to all work on the system.

Working on the electrical equipment
Work may only be performed on the electrical equipment of the truck when it is in a voltage-free state. Function checks, inspections and adjustments on energised parts must only be performed by trained and authorised persons, taking the necessary precautions into account. Rings, metal bracelets etc. must be removed before working on electric components.
To prevent damage to electronic systems with electronic components, such as an electronic driving regulator or lift control, these components must be removed from the truck prior to the start of electric welding.

Work on the electrical system (e.g. connecting a radio, additional headlights etc.) is only permitted with approval from the authorised service centre.

Safety devices

After maintenance and repair work, all safety devices must be reinstalled and tested for operational reliability.

Set values

The device-dependent set values must be observed when making repairs and when changing hydraulic and electrical components. These are listed in the appropriate sections.

Lifting and jacking up

⚠️ DANGER

There is a risk to life if the truck tips over!

If not raised and jacked up properly, the truck may tip over and fall off. Only the hoists specified in the workshop manual for this truck are allowed and are tested for the necessary safety and load capacity.

- Only have the truck raised and jacked up by the authorised service centre.
- Only jack the truck up at the points specified in the workshop manual.

The truck must be raised and jacked up for various types of maintenance work. The authorised service centre must be informed that this is to take place. Safe handling of the truck and the corresponding hoists is described in the truck’s workshop manual.
Working at the front of the truck

⚠️ DANGER
Risk of accident!
If the lift mast or fork carriage is raised, no work may be performed on the lift mast or at the front of the truck unless the following safety measures are observed.
- When securing, only use chains with sufficient load-bearing capacity.
- Contact the authorised service centre.

⚠️ CAUTION
Possibility of damage to the ceiling!
- Note the maximum lift height of the lift mast.

Securing the lift mast against tilting backwards

A hardwood beam with a cross-section of 120 x 120 mm is required. The length of the hardwood beam must approximately correspond to the width of the fork carriage (b3). To avoid impact injuries, the hardwood beam must not protrude beyond the outer contour of the truck. A maximum length matching the total width (b1) of the truck is recommended.
- Obtain the dimensions (b1) and (b3) from the corresponding VDI datasheet.
– Clamp the hardwood beam (1) between the driver protection structure (2) and the lift mast (3).

Removing the lift mast

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of accident!
This work must only be performed by an authorised service technician.
– Arrange for an authorised service technician to remove the lift mast.

Securing the lift mast against falling off

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of accident!
This work must only be performed by an authorised service technician.
– Arrange for an authorised service technician to secure the lift mast.
Providing access to maintenance points

Removing and attaching the left side cover

Removing the cover

- Release the quick release clamps (1) with a 1/4 revolution.
- Remove the cover (2) and put carefully aside.

Attaching the cover

- Carefully position the cover (2).
- Lock the quick release clamps (1) with a 1/4 turn.

Installing and removing the bottom plate

Removing the bottom plate.

**CAUTION**

Risk of short circuit if cables are damaged!
- Check the connecting cables for damage.
- When removing and reinstalling the bottom plate, make sure that the connecting cables are not damaged.

**NOTE**

_The bottom plate has a recess that the operator can insert his fingers into to lift it. The recess is beneath the rubber mat._

**NOTE**

_The accelerator pedal is attached to the bottom plate and is removed with this also. The connecting plug for the accelerator is located underneath the bottom plate._
- Remove the rubber mat.
- Grasp the recess (3) in the bottom plate (2).
- Lift up the bottom plate.

- Disconnect the plug connector (1) on the accelerator pedal.
- Lift bottom plate and place in a safe location.

**Installing the bottom plate**

⚠️ **WARNING**

Risk of crushing between bottom plate and frame edge!

If limbs or objects are between the bottom plate and frame edge when the bottom plate is closed, they can be crushed.

- Make sure that when you close the bottom plate, there is nothing between the cover and the frame edge.

- Position the bottom plate at the front.
- Connect the connection assembly to the accelerator pedal.
- Carefully guide the bottom plate down and close.
- Insert the rubber mat.
Opening/closing the front right cover

Opening the cover

⚠️ WARNING

Risk of injury through crushing if the cover falls down!

The cover is equipped with a gas spring that holds the cover in the open position unless there is any other load on it, e.g. heavy objects, strong winds or other persons.

- There must be no objects on the cover when you open it.
- Make sure that the cover is not being pushed down by strong winds or other persons.

- Release the quick release clamp (3) with a 1/4 revolution.
- Swivel the cover (2) upwards.

The cover is held in the opened position by the gas spring.

Closing the cover

⚠️ WARNING

Risk of crushing between cover and frame edge!

If limbs or objects are between the cover and frame edge when the cover is closed, they can be crushed.

- Make sure when you close the cover that there is nothing between the cover and the frame edge.

- Swivel the cover (2) downwards.
- Lock the quick release clamp (3) with a 1/4 revolution.
Removing and attaching the rear cover

**CAUTION**

Risk of component damage!
If a load is placed on the exhaust air grille (2), this can lead to deformation or cause the exhaust air grille to come away.
- Do not lean or step on the exhaust air grille.
- Do not place any objects on the exhaust air grille.

Removing the rear cover
- Unscrew five screws (3) from the rear cover (1).
- Remove the rear cover (1).

Attaching the rear cover
- Make sure that the top rubber seal of the exhaust air funnel is properly secured.
- Attach the rear cover (1).
- Screw the rear cover into place with five screws (3).
Servicing

Cleaning the radiator and checking for leaks

⚠️ WARNING
Risk of burns due to hot components!
Cooling system components can be so hot that direct contact may burn the skin.
- Make sure that the cooling system has cooled down.
- Do not grasp or touch hot components.
- In the event of burns, seek first aid immediately.

⚠️ CAUTION
Risk of component damage due to overheating!
A cooling system protects the power electronics and hydraulic oil against overheating. Loss of cooling fluid from leaking cooling fluid hoses or from the radiator reduces the cooling capacity and can cause components to overheat. If the cooling fluid level is low, this indicates a leak in the cooling system.
- Check the cooling system for leaks.
- Park the truck securely.
- Remove the left side cover.
- Check the cooling fluid level.
- Remove the rear cover and clean the exhaust grille.
– Clean the radiator grille (1), exhaust air funnel (2) and water drain (3) using a suitable brush and blow them out using compressed air (max. 2 bar) if necessary.

– Unscrew the radiator grille (1) at the screw joints (5) and dismantle it to clean the radiator (4) behind.

– Clean the radiator fins.

– Check the radiator and cooling fluid hoses for leaks.

– Tighten clips at leaking hose connections.

– Check whether the leakage has been eliminated. If not, notify the authorised service centre.

– Attach the radiator grille and screw it firmly into position.

**NOTE**

*Make sure that the radiator grille is screwed tightly into place.*

– Attach the rear cover.

– Attach the left side cover.

### Topping up cooling fluid and checking coolant content

**WARNING**

Risk of scalding due to hot cooling fluid!
The cooling system is pressurised! Opening the cooling fluid tank may result in hot coolant leaking out. Only open the cooling fluid tank when the cooling system is cool.

– Switch off the truck and leave it to cool down.

– Do not open the cooling fluid tank until the truck has cooled down.

**WARNING**

Coolant and cooling fluid can pose a hazard to health and the environment!

– Observe the safety regulations set out in the chapter entitled "Coolant and cooling fluid".

– Remove the left side cover.
Servicing

– Pull up the locking pin (1) on the cooling fluid tank (2).
– Pull out the cooling fluid tank from under the rear cover.
– Slowly open the tank cap (3) and release the over pressure.
– Check the concentration of the coolant.

Concentration of the coolant

⚠️ CAUTION

Risk of corrosion!
The percentage of coolant must always be at least 40%, even if frost protection is not needed in warmer climates.

If greater frost protection is required for climatic reasons, the percentage of coolant can be increased to up to 60%.

The percentage of coolant must not exceed 60%, otherwise the frost protection is reduced. In addition, the cooling effect is also reduced.
– Only use clean, softened water for the water percentage.

⚠️ CAUTION

Coolant with a different specification must not be mixed in!
– Only use coolant as set out in the maintenance data table to top up the tank.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frost protection up to °C</th>
<th>Water percentage %</th>
<th>Coolant percentage %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-25</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-30</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-35</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-40</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For details of the filling quantity in the cooling system, see the chapter entitled "Maintenance data table".
The cooling fluid level should be between the upper marking (4) and the lower marking (5).

- Check the cooling fluid level.
- Top the cooling fluid up to the upper marking if necessary.
- Screw the tank cap (3) back on tightly.
- Slide the coolant tank (2) back into position until the locking pin (1) engages.
- Attach the left side cover.

Servicing wheels and tyres

**WARNING**

Risk of accident!
Uneven wear reduces the stability of the truck and increases the braking distance.
- Worn or damaged tyres (left or right) must be replaced immediately.

**WARNING**

Risk of tipping!
Tyre quality affects the stability of the truck.
If you wish to use a different type of tyre on the truck from the tyres approved by the truck manufacturer, or tyres from a different manufacturer, you must first obtain approval from the truck manufacturer.

**WARNING**

Risk to stability!
When using pneumatic tyres or solid rubber tyres, rim wheel parts must never be changed and rim wheel parts from different manufacturers must not be mixed.

Checking air pressure

- Check the air pressure of all four tyres; adjust if necessary.
The correct air pressure for pneumatic tyres (variant) is determined by the type of tyres used. Observe the information on the adhesive labels (2) on the truck.

### Checking condition and wear of the tyres

**WARNING**

Tyre quality affects the stability and handling of the truck.

Changes can only be made in consultation with the manufacturer.

When changing wheels or tyres, always ensure that this does not cause the truck to tilt to one side (e.g. always change right and left wheels at the same time).

---

**NOTE**

The wear of the tyres on an axle must be approximately the same.

- **The tread depth (1) for pneumatic tyres must be at least 1.6 mm** at every point on the tread.
- **Super-elastic tyres (variant) can be worn down to the wear mark (3).**
  - Check the tread depth on all four tyres.
  - Check distance between the tyre tread and the wear mark.
  - Remove any foreign bodies imbedded in the tyre tread.

**Checking wheel fastenings**

- Check that the wheel fastening (4) is securely fastened and retighten as necessary.
Replacing the fuses

⚠️ DANGER

Risk of fire and risk of injury!
The truck must be de-energised before any work is carried out on the electrical system. Electric shocks can result in injuries and cause fires in the electrical system. There is also a risk of fire if fuses are bridged or repaired. Fuses with the wrong nominal current can cause short circuits.
- Park the truck securely and de-energise.
- Do not bridge or repair fuses.
- Use only fuses with the prescribed nominal current, see the chapter entitled "Fuse assignment".
- See the chapter entitled "Working on the electrical equipment".

ℹ️ NOTE

The electrical fuses for the truck are located in two separate fuse boxes.
Front fuse box
Power distribution unit and 80-V technology

The fuses for the power distribution unit and the 80-V consumers are located in the front fuse box (1).

- De-energise the truck.
- Determine the cause of the short circuit or overload and eliminate it. Notify the authorised service centre as necessary.
- Open the front right cover.

- Open the cover fastenings (1) and remove the cover.
- Replace the defective fuse with nominal current according to "Fuse assignment - front fuse box".
- Close the cover to secure the fuse box.
- Close the front right cover.
- Perform a function check. If the error persists or if the fuse is still defective, notify your authorised service centre.
Rear fuse box
12-V technology

The fuses for the 12-V consumers are located in the rear fuse box (1).

– De-energise the truck.

– Determine the cause of the short circuit or overload and eliminate it. Notify the authorised service centre as necessary.

– Remove the left side cover.

– Open the cover fastenings (1) and remove the cover.

– Replace the defective fuse with nominal current according to "Fuse assignment - rear fuse box".

– Close the cover to secure the fuse box.

– Attach the left side cover.

– Perform a function check. If the error persists or if the fuse is still defective, notify your authorised service centre.
Checking the battery condition, acid level and acid density

- Remove the battery from the truck.

⚠️ DANGER

Risk to life!
- Observe the chapter entitled "Safety regulations when handling the battery".

⚠️ WARNING

Battery acid is toxic and corrosive!
- Observe the safety regulations in the chapter entitled "Battery acid".

⚠️ CAUTION

Damage to the battery possible!
- Follow the information in the operating instructions for the battery.

The battery must be removed for servicing; if necessary, change the truck battery.

- Keep away from open flames and do not smoke.
- Always ensure adequate ventilation in the vicinity.
- Expose the surfaces of the battery cells.
- Do not place any metal objects on the battery.
- Inspect battery for cracked housing, raised plates and acid leaks.
- Have defective batteries repaired by the authorised service centre.
– Open filler cap (1) and check the acid level.

For batteries with "caged cell plugs", the liquid must reach the bottom of the cage.

For batteries without "caged cell plugs", the liquid must reach a height of approx. 10 to 15 mm above the lead plates.

– Top up low fluid with distilled water only.

– Immediately rinse away any spilled battery acid with plenty of water.

– Clean the battery cell cover and dry if necessary.

– Remove any oxidation residue on the battery terminals and battery terminal clips and grease them with acid-free grease.

– Tighten the battery-terminal clips (2) to a torque of 22 - 25 Nm (depending on the size of the terminal screws used).

– Check the acid density using an acid siphon.

After charging, this value must lie between 1.28 - 1.30 kg/l.

For a discharged battery, the acid density must not be less than 1.14 kg/l.

– Close the filler cap (1) again.

When using PowerPlusLife® batteries:

– Make sure that when cleaning or when filling up with liquid none of the liquid flows into the cooling channels.

– Check the cooling air inlet and cooling air outlet for dirt and remove any dirt that is present.

Checking the hydraulic oil level

⚠️ CAUTION

Hydraulic oils are hazardous to your health and are under pressure during operation.

 – Note the safety regulations in the "Hydraulic fluid" chapter.

 – Park the truck securely.

 – Remove the left side cover.
– Unscrew breather filter (1).

– Check the oil level on the oil dipstick. The oil level must be at least up to the mark (2) on the dipstick.

– If the oil level is too low, pour hydraulic oil of the corresponding specification according to the maintenance data table into the filler neck.

– Pour hydraulic oil up to the upper end of the marking (2) on the oil dipstick (maximum).

**NOTE**

*Use a funnel.*

**ENVIRONMENT NOTE**

*Carefully collect any spilled oil and dispose of it in an environmentally friendly manner.*

– Screw in the breather filter with oil dipstick.

– Attach the left side cover.

**Changing the heating system fresh air filter**

The fresh air filter for the heating system is on the right on the exterior of the cab.
– Loosen the quick-release clamp (1) by turning it and remove the cover (2).

– Grasp the filter insert (3) at the finger opening (4) and remove it completely from the filter housing.

– Check the filter insert for contamination and beat out.

**NOTE**

*Replace the filter insert when it is clearly grey, but at least every two months.*

– Remove pollution present in the filter housing and fresh-air inlet.

– Insert the filter insert back into the filter housing.

– Ensure that the filter insert sits correctly and precisely in the filter housing.

– Attach the cover and lock the quick-release clamp.
Replacing the recirculated air filter for the heating system

The recirculated air filter for the heating system is located on the right-hand side of the cab, underneath the heating system panelling (1).

– Unscrew the screws (2) and remove the heating system panelling.
– Completely remove the filter mat (3) from the filter housing.
– Check the filter mat for contamination and beat out.

**NOTE**

Replace the filter mat when it is clearly grey, but at least every two months.

– Remove any dirt that has collected in the filter housing and recirculated-air inlet.
– Re-insert the filter mat into the filter housing.
– Make sure that the filter mat sits correctly and accurately in the filter housing.
– Attach the heating system panelling and secure tightly in place using the screws.
1000-hour maintenance/annual maintenance

Other tasks
- Perform all maintenance work; see the "Maintenance" chapter.

Checking the driver’s seat

⚠️ WARNING
Risk of injury!
- After an accident, check the driver’s seat with attached restraining belt and fastening.
- Check the controls for correct operation.
- Check the condition of the seat (e.g. wear on the upholstery) and secure fastening to the hood.

⚠️ WARNING
Risk of injury!
- Have the seat repaired by the service centre if you identify any damage during the checks.

Maintaining the seat belt

⚠️ DANGER
There is a risk to life if the seat belt fails during an accident!
If the seat belt is faulty, it may tear or open during an accident and no longer keep the driver in the driver’s seat. The driver may therefore be hurled against the truck components or out of the truck.
- Ensure operational reliability by continually testing.
- Do not use a truck with a defective seat belt.
- Only have a defective belt replaced by your service centre.
- Only use genuine spare parts.
- Do not make any changes to the belt.

ℹ️ NOTE

Carry out the following checks on a regular basis (monthly). In the case of significant strain, a daily check is necessary.
Checking the seat belt

- Pull out the belt (3) completely and check for wear. The belt must not be frayed or cut. The stitching must not be loose.
- Check whether the belt is dirty.
- Check whether parts are worn or damaged, including the attachment points.
- Check the buckle (1) to ensure that it locks in properly.

When the belt tongue (2) is inserted, the belt must be held securely.

- The belt tongue (2) must release when the red button (4) is pressed.
- The automatic blocking mechanism must be tested at least once a year:
  - Park the forklift truck on level ground.
  - Pull out the belt with a jerk.

The automatic blocking mechanism must block extension of the belt.

- Tilt the seat at least 30° (if necessary, remove the seat).
- Slowly extend the belt.

The automatic blocking mechanism must block extension of the belt.

Cleaning the seat belt

- Clean the seat belt as necessary, but without using chemical cleaning materials (a brush will suffice).

Replacement after an accident

As a rule, the seat belt must be changed after an accident.
**Checking the door latch**

- Inspect the condition of the catch bolt and check for wear.
- Check the lock mechanism for easy operation.

**Lubricating the joints and controls**

- Oil or grease other bearings and joints according to the maintenance data table.
  - Driver’s seat guide
  - In the cab, lubricate door hinges at the lubricating nipple (variant)
  - Battery door hinges or battery cover hinges
  - Lubricate shafts and joints in dual-pedal operation (variant)

**Lubricating the lift mast and roller track**

- Remove dirt and lubricant residue from the roller track.
- Lubricate the roller tracks (1) of the outside, middle, and inside mast with a super-pressure adhesion lubricant to reduce wear. See ⇒ Chapter "Maintenance data table", P. 6-307.

**NOTE**

_Spray the roller track evenly from a distance of approx. 15-20 cm. Wait approx. 15 minutes until the equipment is ready to use again._
Checking the lift cylinders and connections for leaks

⚠️ WARNING
Risk of injury!
Observe safety regulations for working on the lift mast, see the "Working at the front of the truck" chapter.

– Check hydraulic connections and lift cylinders for leaks (visual inspection).
– Have leaking screw joints or leaking hydraulic cylinders repaired by the authorised service centre.

Checking the hydraulic system for leaks

⚠️ WARNING
Hydraulic oil under pressure can escape from leaking lines and cause injuries to the skin.
Wear suitable protective gloves, industrial goggles etc.

⚠️ WARNING
Hydraulic hoses become brittle!
Hydraulic hoses should not be used longer than 6 years.
The specifications of BGR 237 should be complied with. Deviating national laws are to be taken into account.

– Check pipe and hose connection screw joints for leaks (traces of oil).

Hose lines must be changed if:
• The outer layer has been breached or becomes brittle with tears
• They are leaking
• There are unnatural deformations (e.g. bubble formation or buckling)
• A fitting is detached from the hose
• A fitting is badly damaged or corroded
Pipes must be changed if:
• There is abrasion with the loss of material
• There are unnatural deformations and detectable bending stress
• They are leaking

Checking the fork arms
– Check the fork arms (1) for visible deformation and excessive wear.
Wear must not amount to more than 10% of the original thickness.
– Check the fork latch (3) for correct operation.
– Check that the locking screw (2) is secured and cannot fall out of the fork arms.
– Replace any worn or deformed fork arms.

⚠️ CAUTION
Fork arms must not be uneven!
– Always replace both fork arms.

Checking the reversible fork arms

ℹ️ NOTE
This check is only required for reversible fork arms (variant).
– Check the outside of the fork bend (1) for cracks. Contact your service centre.
Greasing the automatic tow coupling

**NOTE**

Wear to moving parts can be significantly reduced by appropriate servicing and regular lubrication of the coupling.

- Avoid over-greasing!

**NOTE**

Close the coupling before cleaning with a high-pressure cleaner. After cleaning, lubricate the coupling pin, tow bar eye and its supporting surface again.

**Model RO*243**

- Pull out the safety handle (3).
- Push the hand lever (2) upwards.
- Grease using the lubricating nipple (1) in accordance with the maintenance data table; see ⇒ Chapter "Maintenance data table", P. 6-307.
- Close the coupling by raising the coupling pin with a suitable tool.
- For journeys with a rigid drawbar trailer, lubricate the underside of the tow bar eye and the supporting surface on the coupling.

- Determine the wear on the coupling pin. The diameter of the spherical part must not be less than 36.5 mm.

**Model RO*244 A**

- Open coupling.
Grease using the lubricating nipple(1) in accordance with the maintenance data table; see ⇒ Chapter "Maintenance data table", P. 6-307.

Grease coupling pin, tow bar eye and its supporting surface.

**Model RO*245**

Lubricate via the points provided for this purpose (lubricating nipple, opened coupling) in accordance with the maintenance data table; see ⇒ Chapter "Maintenance data table", P. 6-307.

Grease the supporting surface for the tow-bar eye.
1000-hour maintenance/annual maintenance

Model RO*841

- Lubricate via the points provided for this purpose (lubricating nipple, opened coupling) in accordance with the maintenance data table; see ⇒ Chapter "Maintenance data table", P. 6-307.
- Grease the supporting surface for the tow-bar eye.
7

Technical data
1 Fork spacing is adjustable

NOTE

Measurements $h_1$, $h_3$, $h_4$, $h_6$ and $b_1$ are customised and can be taken from the order confirmation.
Centre of gravity "S" (distance measured from the front axle)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Distance (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RX60-60</td>
<td>1006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RX60-70</td>
<td>1006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RX60-80</td>
<td>1006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RX60-80 (LSP 900)</td>
<td>1006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

The specified centre of gravity "S" relates to trucks with standard equipment. If, for example, the truck is equipped with a different lift mast, attachment or driver protection structure, this value is only a guide value. If necessary, the centre of gravity "S" must be determined on an individual basis for each truck.
NOTE

Values are valid for the standard device. Variants may deviate from them.

## Characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>RX60-60</th>
<th>RX60-70</th>
<th>RX60-80</th>
<th>RX60-80 LSP 900</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type carrier</td>
<td>6341</td>
<td>6342</td>
<td>6343</td>
<td>6344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturer</td>
<td>STILL GmbH</td>
<td>STILL GmbH</td>
<td>STILL GmbH</td>
<td>STILL GmbH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive</td>
<td>Electric</td>
<td>Electric</td>
<td>Electric</td>
<td>Electric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Seated</td>
<td>Seated</td>
<td>Seated</td>
<td>Seated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rated capacity/load</td>
<td>Q (kg)</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>7000</td>
<td>8000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load centre of gravity</td>
<td>c (mm)</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load distance</td>
<td>x (mm)</td>
<td>710</td>
<td>720</td>
<td>720</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheelbase</td>
<td>y (mm)</td>
<td>2285</td>
<td>2285</td>
<td>2285</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Weights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>RX60-60</th>
<th>RX60-70</th>
<th>RX60-80</th>
<th>RX60-80 LSP 900</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Net weight</td>
<td>kg</td>
<td>11,996</td>
<td>12,512</td>
<td>13,369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axle load with front load</td>
<td>kg</td>
<td>15,842</td>
<td>17,751</td>
<td>19,355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axle load with rear load</td>
<td>kg</td>
<td>2154</td>
<td>1761</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axle load without front load</td>
<td>kg</td>
<td>6413</td>
<td>6591</td>
<td>6627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axle load without rear load</td>
<td>kg</td>
<td>5619</td>
<td>5823</td>
<td>6655</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Technical data

#### Wheels, chassis frame

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>RX60-60</th>
<th>RX60-70</th>
<th>RX60-80</th>
<th>RX60-80 LSP 900</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tyres: superelastic (SE), solid rubber (V), pneumatic (L)</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>SE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front wheel size</td>
<td>355/50-20</td>
<td>8.25-15</td>
<td>315/70-15</td>
<td>315/70-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear wheel size</td>
<td>250-15</td>
<td>250-15</td>
<td>250-15</td>
<td>28 x 12.5–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of front wheels (x = driven)</td>
<td>2x</td>
<td>4x</td>
<td>4x</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of rear wheels (x = driven)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front track width, single tyre</td>
<td>1364</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front track width, twin tyres</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1510</td>
<td>1561</td>
<td>1561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear track width</td>
<td>1358</td>
<td>1358</td>
<td>1358</td>
<td>1432</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Basic dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>RX60-60</th>
<th>RX60-70</th>
<th>RX60-80</th>
<th>RX60-80 LSP 900</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lift mast/fork carriage tilt, forwards Degree</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift mast/fork carriage tilt, backwards Degree</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height with lift mast retracted h1 (mm)</td>
<td>2710</td>
<td>2710</td>
<td>2710</td>
<td>2710</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free lift h2 (mm)</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift height h3 (mm)</td>
<td>3550</td>
<td>3150</td>
<td>3150</td>
<td>2750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height with lift mast extended h4 (mm)</td>
<td>4440</td>
<td>4240</td>
<td>4140</td>
<td>4140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height above overhead guard h6 (mm)</td>
<td>2697</td>
<td>2697</td>
<td>2697</td>
<td>2697</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat height in relation to SIP/standing height h7 (mm)</td>
<td>1719</td>
<td>1719</td>
<td>1719</td>
<td>1719</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coupling height h10 (mm)</td>
<td>520/670</td>
<td>520/670</td>
<td>520/670</td>
<td>520/670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total length l1 (mm)</td>
<td>4660</td>
<td>4660</td>
<td>4660</td>
<td>5335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length including fork back l2 (mm)</td>
<td>3460</td>
<td>3460</td>
<td>3460</td>
<td>3535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total width b1</td>
<td>1679</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>2141</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Technical data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>RX60-60</th>
<th>RX60-70</th>
<th>RX60-80</th>
<th>RX60-80 LSP 900</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fork arm thickness</td>
<td>s (mm)</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fork arm width</td>
<td>e (mm)</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fork arm length</td>
<td>l (mm)</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fork carriage, class/form A, B</td>
<td>ISO IV A</td>
<td>ISO IV A</td>
<td>ISO IV A</td>
<td>ISO IV A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fork carriage width</td>
<td>b3 (mm)</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground clearance with load under lift mast</td>
<td>m1 (mm)</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground clearance at centre of wheelbase</td>
<td>m2 (mm)</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aisle width for pallets 1000 x 1200 crosswise</td>
<td>Ast (mm)</td>
<td>4907</td>
<td>4907</td>
<td>4907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aisle width for pallets 800 x 1200 lengthwise</td>
<td>Ast (mm)</td>
<td>5107</td>
<td>5107</td>
<td>5107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turning radius</td>
<td>Wa (mm)</td>
<td>3007</td>
<td>3007</td>
<td>3007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smallest pivot point distance</td>
<td>b13 (mm)</td>
<td>877</td>
<td>877</td>
<td>877</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Performance data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>RX60-60</th>
<th>RX60-70</th>
<th>RX60-80</th>
<th>RX60-80 LSP 900</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Driving speed with load</td>
<td>km/h</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving speed without load</td>
<td>km/h</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifting speed with load</td>
<td>m/s</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifting speed without load</td>
<td>m/s</td>
<td>0.48</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>0.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lowering speed with load</td>
<td>m/s</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.53</td>
<td>0.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lowering speed without load</td>
<td>m/s</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>0.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tractive force with load</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>28788</td>
<td>28674</td>
<td>28468</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tractive force without load</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>29023</td>
<td>28936</td>
<td>28767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climbing capability with load</td>
<td>%</td>
<td>16.3</td>
<td>16.1</td>
<td>16.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climbing capability without load</td>
<td>%</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>24.1</td>
<td>23.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration time with load (15 m)</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>5.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration time without load (15 m)</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Electric motor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>RX60-60</th>
<th>RX60-70</th>
<th>RX60-80</th>
<th>RX60-80 LSP 900</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Traction motor, power rating S3 60 min kW</td>
<td>2x10.5</td>
<td>2x10.5</td>
<td>2x10.5</td>
<td>2x10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift motor, power rating at 15% ED kW</td>
<td>2x21.0</td>
<td>2x21.0</td>
<td>2x21.0</td>
<td>2x21.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery in accordance with DIN 43531/35/36 A, B, C kWh</td>
<td>DIN 43536 A</td>
<td>DIN 43536 A</td>
<td>DIN 43536 A</td>
<td>DIN 43536 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery voltage U (V)</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery capacity K5 Ah</td>
<td>1240</td>
<td>1240</td>
<td>1240</td>
<td>1240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery weight kg</td>
<td>2824</td>
<td>2824</td>
<td>2824</td>
<td>2824</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy consumption: 45 VDI working cycles/hour kWh/h</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>14.5</td>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>17.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handling performance t/h</td>
<td>348.4</td>
<td>376.1</td>
<td>411.4</td>
<td>420.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy consumption versus handling performance kWh/h</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>19.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Other

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>RX60-60</th>
<th>RX60-70</th>
<th>RX60-80</th>
<th>RX60-80 LSP 900</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Working pressure for attachments bar</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil flow for attachments l/min</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound pressure level LpA dB (A)</td>
<td>66.4</td>
<td>66.4</td>
<td>66.4</td>
<td>66.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound power level LwA dB (A)</td>
<td>86.6</td>
<td>86.6</td>
<td>86.6</td>
<td>86.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human vibrations acceleration 2) as per EN 13059 m/s²</td>
<td>&lt; 0.38</td>
<td>&lt; 0.38</td>
<td>&lt; 0.38</td>
<td>&lt; 0.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tow coupling, type/model</td>
<td>Bolt</td>
<td>Bolt</td>
<td>Bolt</td>
<td>Bolt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2) Depending on the driver's seat, see chapter entitled "Emissions".
**Ergonomic dimensions**

⚠️ **WARNING**

Danger of impact injuries to the head!

If the head of the operator is located too close to the underside of the roof, the suspension of the driver’s seat or an accident may cause the head to strike the overhead guard.

To avoid head injuries, a minimum distance of **40 mm** must be ensured between the underside of the roof and the head of the tallest operator.

To determine the actual head clearance, the operator must sit in the driver’s seat and the seat suspension must be set to this driver’s requirements.

Due to the individual nature of height and body weight as well as the wide variety of types of driver’s seat and overhead guard, the minimum head clearance must be ensured in every truck.

The driver’s compartment has been designed taking ergonomics in the workplace into account and in accordance with EN ISO 3411. In general, from the seat position, the operator has sufficient space to reach the operating devices safely, to operate the truck and to view the outline of the truck. Operators whose body size deviates from the specified dimensions on which EN ISO 3411 is based must be individually considered by the operating company.
Battery specifications

⚠️ CAUTION

The battery weight and dimensions affect the stability of the truck.

When replacing the battery, the weight ratios must not be changed. The battery weight must remain within the weight range specified on the nameplate. The location of ballast weights must not be changed. The bottom of the battery tray must be closed.

- Use batteries that meet DIN standards.
- Do not change the position of ballast weights.
- Check the battery weight against the information on the nameplate.
- Only use a battery tray that is closed at the bottom.

Lead-acid batteries

ℹ️ NOTE

Battery specifications to DIN 43536; cells to DIN EN 60254-2, 80 V circuit A.

- The battery weight can be found on the nameplate of the battery.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Battery designation</th>
<th>Capacity (Ah)</th>
<th>Battery compartment dimensions (mm)</th>
<th>Tray</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Depth</td>
<td>Width</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 PzS 1085 PowerPlusLife®</td>
<td>1085</td>
<td>1037</td>
<td>1287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 PzS 1120</td>
<td>1120</td>
<td>1037</td>
<td>1287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 PzS 1240</td>
<td>1240</td>
<td>1037</td>
<td>1287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TENSOR® TCSM 2545</td>
<td>1320</td>
<td>1037</td>
<td>1287</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ℹ️ NOTE

When determining the weight, add the weight of the battery base frame (65 kg) to the battery weight.

ℹ️ NOTE

The maximum speed pre-set in the drive programme is technically dependent on the battery used. Depending on the battery type used, the preset maximum speed must be adapted by the authorised service centre. If
Battery specifications

the maximum speed is not adapted, it can lead to technical faults in drive mode.

• Contact your authorised service centre.
NOTE

The electrical fuses for the truck are located in two separate fuse boxes. Depending on the specification, not all fuses will be present in the truck.

Fuse assignment - Front fuse box
Power Distribution Unit and 80-V technology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F11</td>
<td>SU control unit/MCU control unit (10 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9F5</td>
<td>Not assigned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9F16</td>
<td>Heating system (30 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F10</td>
<td>Reserve (20 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F14</td>
<td>Not assigned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F15</td>
<td>Voltage transformer U1 (10 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9F17</td>
<td>Voltage transformers U2 and U3 (15 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9F18</td>
<td>Voltage transformers U4 and U5 (15 A)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fuse assignment - rear fuse box
12-V technology

- 1F16 Proportional technology (10 A)
- 9F03 Option board (10 A)
- 5F12 Front CPP - control unit (20 A)
- 9F32 Not assigned
- 9F33 Not assigned
- 5F11 Roof CPP - control unit (30 A)
- 5F13 Seat CPP - control unit (30 A)
- 1F10 Cooling pump (10 A)
- 4F01 Signal horn (10 A)
- 9F34 Cooling fan (20 A)
Index

A

Access authorisation
- Changing the password ................. 92
- Defining the driver PIN ................. 88
- Entering the access code ............... 86
- Selecting the driver PIN ............... 89
Access authorisation with PIN code .... 85
Accessories .................................. 4
Accident recorder ............................ 197
Actuating the drive direction switch
- Fingertip version .......................... 111
- Joystick 4Plus version ................. 110
- Mini-console version .................... 111
- Mini-lever version ....................... 110
Address of manufacturer .................. I
Adjusting the armrest ....................... 76
Adjusting the fork ........................... 150
Adjusting the steering column .......... 77
After washing ................................ 296
Attachments
- Controlling using a double mini-lever .... 168
- Controlling using the double mini-lever and the 5th function .. 170
- Controlling using the four-way mini-lever and the 5th function .. 178
- Controlling using the three-way mini-lever and the 5th function .. 174
- Controlling via the joystick 4Plus ....... 180
- Controlling with a quadruple mini-lever .... 176
- Controlling with a triple mini-lever .... 172
- Controlling with fingertip ............... 182
- Controlling with fingertip and 5th function .... 183
Fitting ........................................ 162
General controlling ......................... 166
Mounting ...................................... 163
Releasing the pressure from the connections .... 164
Special risks ................................ 20
Taking up a load ............................ 189
Automatic lift cut out ...................... 123

Automatic tow coupling .................. 208
Coupling RO*243 ......................... 210
Coupling RO*244 A ....................... 212
Coupling RO*245 ......................... 215
Uncoupling RO*243 ...................... 212
Uncoupling RO*244 A ................... 214
Uncoupling RO*245 ...................... 216

B

Battery
- Changing the battery type ............. 267
- Charging .................................... 272
- Charging to equalise ..................... 275
- Checking the acid density .............. 326
- Checking the acid level ................. 326
- Checking the charge status ............ 272
- Checking the condition ................. 326
- Disposal ................................... 13
- PowerPlusLife ............................. 283
- Safety regulations ....................... 265
Battery acid .................................. 43
Battery cover
- Closing ..................................... 269
- Opening .................................... 268
Battery male connector
- Connecting ................................ 81
- Disconnecting ............................. 270
Battery specifications ..................... 347
Before taking up load ..................... 145
Blue-Q
- Configure ................................ 230
- Functional description ................. 228
- Switching off ............................ 229
- Switching on ............................. 229
Bottom plate
- Installing ................................ 315
- Removing ................................ 314

C

Cab
- Operating the interior lighting ........ 200
- Operating the rear window heating .... 201
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CE labelling</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changes to the truck</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the drive direction</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dual pedal version</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the fork arms</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the heating system fresh air filter</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the password</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking coolant content</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking the door latch</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking the driver's seat</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking the emergency off function</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking the fork arms</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking the lift cylinders and connections for leaks</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking wheel fastenings</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clamp locking mechanism</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Releasing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning the electrical system</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning the truck</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning the windows</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climbing into the truck</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climbing out of the truck</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clipboard</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closing the cab door</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closing the side windows</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition of roadways</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumables</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolant and cooling fluid safety information</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disposal</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety information for handling battery acid</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety information for handling oils</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety information for hydraulic fluid</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact details</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking the level</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolant and cooling fluid</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooling fluid</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topping up</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copyright and trademark rights</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coupling pin in the counterweight</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crane loading</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determining the loading weight</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hooking on the lifting straps</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curve Speed Control</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damage</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danger area</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danger to employees</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declaration of conformity</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defects</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining the driver PIN</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition of directions</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimensions</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimensions of roadways</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direction indicators</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mini-console version</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mini-lever version</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display and operating unit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional indicators</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the displays</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure Blue Q</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicators</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display messages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display content</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive-specific</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display operating unit</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resetting the daily kilometres</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the date</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the language</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the time</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard displays</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display symbols</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary equipment soft key functions</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error messages</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu navigation soft key functions</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numeric keypad</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating messages</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status LEDs</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning messages</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display-operating unit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard display elements</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disposal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Components</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documentation scope</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double mini-lever</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifting/lowering the fork carriage</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilting the lift mast</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver rights, duties and rules of behaviour</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver’s cab</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drivers</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on ascending and descending slopes</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving lights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching on and off</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving on gradients</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving on lifts</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving on loading bridges</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effects on additional consumers</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergencies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Truck tipping over</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the emergency hammer</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency hammer</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency lowering</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency shutdown</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emissions</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise emissions</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibrations</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering the access code</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ergonomic dimensions</td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error code table</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC declaration of conformity in accordance with Machinery Directive</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emissions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handling gas springs and accumulators</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hazard areas</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hazard warning system</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hazards and countermeasures</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heating system</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the air flow</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching on</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching on the blower</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic blocking function</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Releasing</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic fluid</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The index entries are placeholders and do not reflect the actual content of the document. The page numbers are also placeholders and may not correspond to actual page numbers in the document. The document likely contains detailed instructions and information related to the operation, maintenance, and safety of a specific equipment or system.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking for leaks</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking the oil level</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identification points</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impermissible use</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information for carrying out maintenance</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance timeframe</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information symbols</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inserting wedges</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulation testing</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive battery test values</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Truck test values</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insurance cover on company premises</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior lighting</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issue date of the operating instructions</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jacking up</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joystick 4Plus</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fork-carriage sideshift</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifting/lowering the fork carriage</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilting the lift mast</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lashing down</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left side cover</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attaching</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removing</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift cut out</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift mast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lubricating the roller track</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removing</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Securing against falling off</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Securing against tilting backwards</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift mast versions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triplex lift mast</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift mast vertical position</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic approach</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calibrating</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possible restrictions</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run-in to end stops</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilting the lift mast backwards</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilting the lift mast forwards</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifting</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifting system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlling using a double mini-lever</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlling using a quadruple mini-lever</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlling using a triple mini-lever</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlling using the Joystick 4Plus</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlling with the fingertip console</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating devices</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lighting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching on and off</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of abbreviations</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lithium-ion batteries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the battery type</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picking up</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting down</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transporting</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load capacity</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load chains</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load measurement</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Execution</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zero adjustment</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lubricating the joints and controls</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removing and attaching the rear cover</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Maintenance data table ............... 307
Battery .................................. 307
Controls/joints .......................... 307
Cooling system (power electronics/hydraulic oil) .......... 309
Drive axle ................................ 308
Electrical system ........................ 307
General lubrication points .............. 307
Hydraulic system ........................ 307
Lift mast .................................. 308
Load chains ................................ 309
Steering axle ............................. 308
Tyres ..................................... 308
Washer system ............................ 309
Maintenance personnel for batteries ... 298
Maintenance work without special qualifications .......... 298
Malfunctions during lifting mode ......... 129
Manual tow coupling
  Coupling .................................. 206
  Uncoupling ................................ 208
Medical equipment ...................... 36

Message
  ! PARKING BRAKE OIL PRESSURE ....................... 244
  ? VERTICAL POSITION .............................. 239
  ACCELERATOR .................................. 237
  APPLY HANDBRAKE ............................... 236
  ARE YOU SURE ? ................................ 241
  BRAKE SENSOR .................................. 237
  CLOSE THE DOOR .................................. 245
  CODE DENIED .................................... 237
  EMERGENCY SWITCH ............................. 239
  LIFT HEIGHT ..................................... 245
  LOWER FORKS .................................... 238
  MOT/GEN. TEMP. ................................. 244
  NOT VALID ....................................... 244
  OVERHEATING .................................... 243, 245
  PARKING BRAKE ACTIVE ..................... 237
  PARKING BRAKE: APPLY HANDBRAKE! .......... 238
  REFERENCE CYCLE .............................. 239
  RELEASE PARKING BRAKE ..................... 237
  SAFETY BELT .................................... 240
  SEAT SWITCH .................................... 241
  SERVICE BRAKE .................................. 236
  STEERING ....................................... 238
  SURVEILLANCE .................................. 244
  SWITCH OFF TRUCK? ......................... 237
  TILTING SPEED .................................. 238

Messages
  General ....................................... 235
  Mini console ................................... 59
  Misuse of safety systems ...................... 35
  MSG 65/MSG 75 driver’s seat
    Adjusting ...................................... 72
    Adjusting the backrest extension .............. 75
    Adjusting the lumbar support .................. 75
    Adjusting the seat backrest .................... 73
    Adjusting the seat suspension .................. 74
    Moving ........................................... 73
    Switching the seat heater on and off ........... 76
# Index

## N
- Nameplate ................................................. 62
- Neutral position ......................................... 109

## O
- Oils .......................................................... 41
- Opening the cab door .................................... 197
- Opening the side windows ............................... 198
- Operating company ....................................... 28
- Operating devices for hydraulic and driving functions ........................................... 53
- Operating materials
  - Quality and quantity ................................... 304
- Operating procedures .................................... 11
- Operating the service brake ............................. 117
- Operating the signal horn ................................ 95
- Ordering spare parts and wearing parts ............ 304
- Overhead guard
  - Drilling ..................................................... 34
  - Roof loads ............................................... 34
  - Welding ..................................................... 34
- Overview
  - Driver's compartment .................................. 51

## P
- Packaging .................................................... 13
- Parking brake
  - Mechanical parking brake ............................ 118
- Parking the truck securely
  - Switching off the truck ................................ 286
- Personnel qualifications ................................ 298
- Picking up loads .......................................... 149
- Place of use ............................................... 17
- PowerPlusLife
  - Cooling air flow ........................................ 284
  - Diagnostic connector .................................. 285
  - Error messages ......................................... 285
  - Fluid level .............................................. 285
  - Internal error .......................................... 285
  - Temperature monitoring ............................... 284
- PowerPlusLife battery .................................. 283
- Procedure if truck tips over ........................... 258
- Production number ....................................... 63
- Prohibition of use by unauthorised persons ......... 30
- Proper usage .............................................. 16
- Push-up roof window .................................... 204

## Q
- Quadruple mini-lever
  - Tilting the lift mast .................................... 134

## R
- Radiator
  - Checking for leaks ..................................... 318
  - Cleaning ................................................. 318
- Radio .......................................................... 201
- Re-commissioning after shutdown ..................... 290
- Rear cover
  - Attaching ............................................... 317
  - Removing ............................................... 317
- Rear window heating .................................... 201
- Reducing speed when turning .......................... 121
- Reducing speed with a raised load ..................... 122
- Replacing the battery
  - using a truck ........................................... 277
- Replacing the fuses ...................................... 323
  - 12-V technology ........................................ 325
  - 80-V technology ........................................ 324
- Front fuse box ............................................ 324
- Power distribution unit ................................ 324
- Rear fuse box ............................................. 325
- Replacing the recirculated air filter for the heating system .................................. 330
- Resetting the daily kilometres ......................... 225
- Resetting the daily operating hours ................... 225
- Residual dangers ......................................... 19
- Residual risks ............................................. 19
- Retrofitting .................................................. 31
- Reversible fork arm
  - Checking ................................................... 335
- Reversible fork arms ..................................... 142
- Roadways .................................................... 105 – 107
- Rotating beacon ........................................... 191
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rules for roadways and the working area</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety devices</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety inspection</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety regulations for maintenance</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety regulations for working on the lift mast</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety regulations when driving</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety regulations when handling loads</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety regulations when handling the battery</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery weight and dimensions</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damage to cables and battery male connectors</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire protection measures</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifting accessory</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance personnel</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schematic views</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belt</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking</td>
<td>332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning</td>
<td>332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fastening</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fastening on a steep slope</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintaining</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malfunction due to cold</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Releasing</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacement after an accident</td>
<td>332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting the drive direction</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting the driver PIN</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set values</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the date</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the drive programme</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the language</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the time</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutdown</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-commissioning</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutting down the truck</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special risks</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring-operated brake</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Releasing</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stability</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard display elements</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting drive mode</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dual pedal version</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status LEDs</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering system</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking for correct function</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storing the truck</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StVZO (Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) information</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching on the key switch</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical data</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimensions</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VDI datasheet</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three-way mini-lever</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifting/lowering the fork carriage</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topicality of the operating instructions</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towed load</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proper use</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transporting pallets</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transporting suspended loads</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triple mini-lever</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilting the lift mast</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Types of lift mast</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telescopic mast</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyres</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety principles</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

56358042501 EN - 10/2016
U
Units ............................................ 10
Unlocking the emergency off switch .... 82
Using working platforms .............. 18

V
Variants
Access authorisation with PIN code ..... 85
Accident recorder ....................... 197
Automatic lift cut out ................. 123
Clamp locking mechanism ............. 185
Clipboard .................................... 204
FleetManager ............................... 196
Fork extension ............................. 140
Heating system ........................... 202
Lift mast vertical position .............. 124
Lifting systems ............................ 123
Load measurement ....................... 146
Push-up roof window ................... 204
Radio ........................................ 201
Reducing speed with a raised load ... 122
Reversible fork arms ..................... 142
Triplex lift mast ............................ 129
Wheel chock ............................... 288
Windscreen wiper/washer ............. 196
VDI datasheet ............................... 342
Vertical lift mast position
  Checking for correct function ......... 102

View of functions and operations ........ 11
View of operating procedures ............ 11
Views of the display operating unit .... 12
Visual inspections ........................... 66

W
Warning regarding non-original parts .... 34
Wheel chock ................................. 288
Wheels and tyres
  Checking air pressure .................... 321
  Checking condition and wear of the
tyres .................................... 322
  Checking wheel fastenings .......... 322
  Servicing ................................ 321
Windscreen wiper/washer ............. 196
Working at the front of the truck ....... 312
Working on the electrical equipment ... 310
Working on the hydraulic equipment ... 310
Working spotlights
  Automatically switching on/off ..... 195
  Lift-height-controlled switching
  on/off .................................. 195
  Manually switching on/off .......... 194
  Switching on and off .............. 191, 194

Z
Zero adjustment of the load measure-
ment .................................... 101